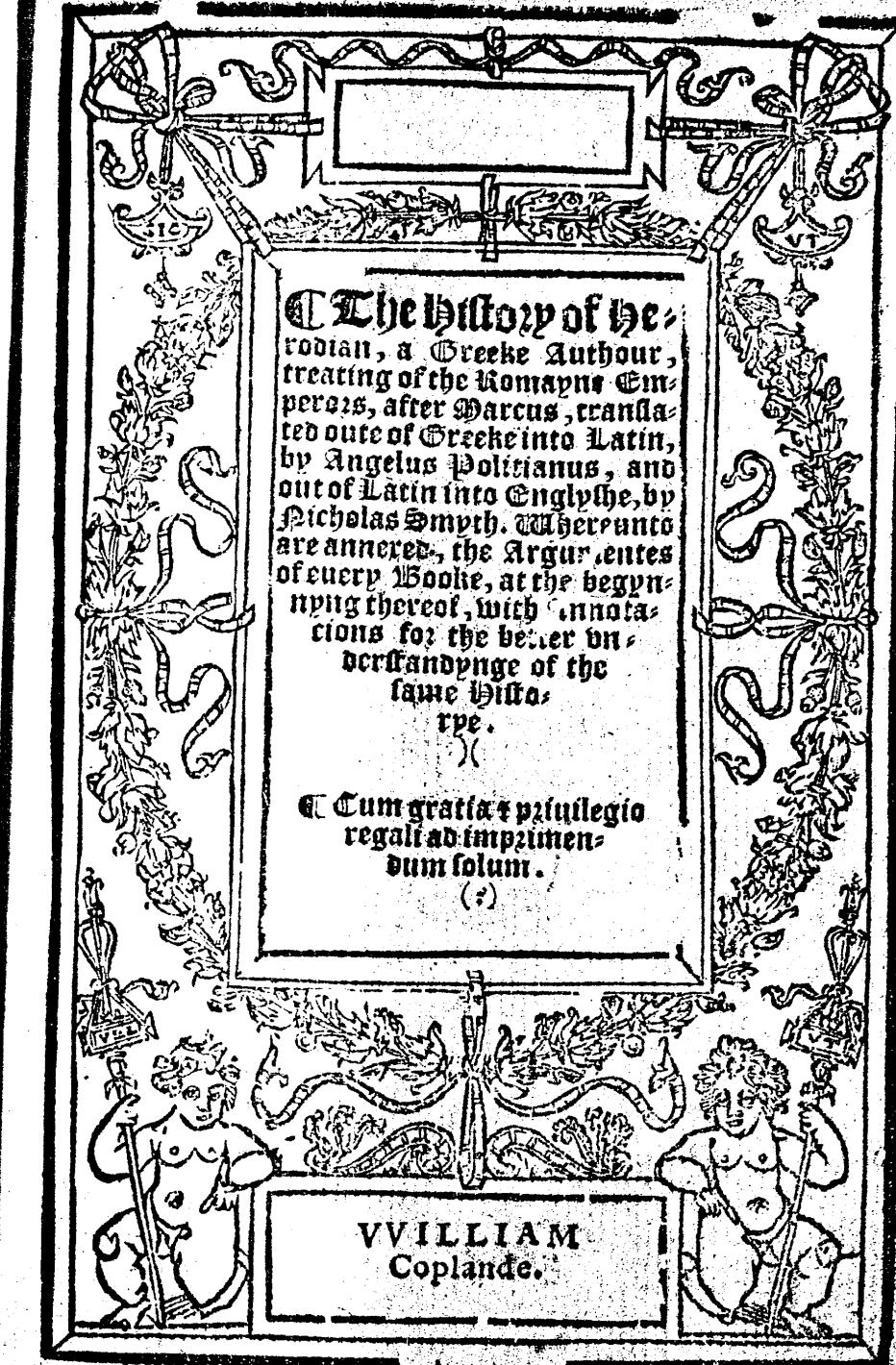


Perfect

1 2 3 4 5
BRITISH 1 MUSEUM 2



To the ryghte honorable Lord, Willm
Earle of Penbroke, &c. Lord President of the Kyng
and Queenes Maesties Counsayle, in the Mar-
ches of Wales, and one of theyr Maesties most
honorable preuie Counsallie, his humble D^r
tour Psycholas Smyth, wryth all
thynges prosper-
ous.



mongest all those, that haue by
theyr wrytynge, beautifyed the
Greke & Latyn tonge, none are
supposed (right honozable & ver-
tuous Lord) so much to haue pro-
fited mortall affaires, as Histori-
ographers, who haue faychfully
reduced into wrytynge the actes &
deedes of such, as in fame (either
good or euill) haue passed thys
transitore ipse. They haue put before our eyes, the ly-
ues, maners, and doinges, of all sortes of men, w^{ch} theyr
counselfes, fortunes, and aduentures, the whiche theyr
postericie maye, as in a paynted Table beholde: and
therby learne to profyte, as wel the Common wealthe,
as their owne priuate estat. Chieflye, through the ma-
nyfold examples, bothe good, and euill, conteyned in
Histories, all sortes of people may attayne by them, to
more knowledge in shorte space, then otherwyse they
micht in al theyr lives, if y^e same were much lōger then
the commō age of man. For prole wherol, we haue the
memorie of Lucius Lucullus the noble Romaine: who
(as Cicero wryteth) at his departure frō Rome against
the great kyng Mithridates, beynge utterly unskylfull
in warfare, whyles he sayled on the Sea, so trauyaled,
in conferring wryth learned men, and reading of Histoi-
ries, that when he arriued in Asie, he was so excellente
in warlyke knowledge, that by the confession of Mth
ridates, he deserued preferment aboue all the Chiefe-
aynes in warre, that were before his tyme. Alexander
Seuerus also, Emperour of Rome, when so euer he



Made preparation to warre, accustomed to consulte w
such as were expert in Histories. And good cause why.
For yf Use(as layeth Afranius) hath engendred wyle-
dome: and Memorye as the Moother, hath brought her
into lyghte: Who oughte to be more sage, and discrete,
then they whiche reteyn in memorie, the deades, & ma-
ners, not only of one age, or Cittie, but of al ages, & naci-
ons? Thys much considerynge (ryght excellent Lorde)
and enduced by the prudente wordes of Salust, in his
Preface to Catilines wonderfull Coniuracion, wher-
by he exhorteth man (yf he entende to be reputed wox,
thver then other mortall Creatures) so to employe his
whole labour, and studye, that he ouerlyp not his lyfe,
in slouthful silence, as sauage, and brute beastes, whom
Nature hath sounmed prone, & subiect, to hys filchie lustes
of the bealy: I haue enterpryzed to tralate out of Latyn
this presente Historie of Herodian, a Greke Authour,
treating of the Romayn Emperours, betwene Marcus
the Philosopher, and Gordianus the yonger, not be-
fo're (I thynke) brought into oure Englyshe conge. And
haue presumed, to dedicat y same unto your good Lord-
shyp, whome not onely fame, but also experiance, doeth
apparauntly proue, to be the perfect Patronne of knyght-
lye prowes, and vertue. Humbly besyching your good
Lordshyp, of your accustomed clemencie, so to acrpte
thys my symple gift, beying the Cropp of my barreyne
Baruest, as may emboden other toyfullye to embzace
it, and encourage me, to employe my poore labour fur-
ther hereafter. And so I remayne a continuall Inter-
cessor to almyghtye God, for the prosperous estate
of youre Lordshyppe, wth contynuall
encrease of vertue, and
honour.

THE PROHEME OF
the historie of Herodian, trea-
sing of the Romayne Em-
perours, after
Marcus.



Hey whiche haue delynered unto
theyz posterite auncient tradicions, and endeavord to renewe by
wryting the olde memorie of hystories: They I saye, earnestly
affecting the renowme of erudition and learning: and buslyp stru-
dyeng to preserue theyz names
from thinurie of obliuion, did employ moche lesse
laboure in searching oute the truthe, then in trim-
myng the stile of their Histories. Knowinge pre-
cisely, that althoughe they falsifyed any thing longe
before theyz time passed, the same coulde not be repre-
hendid, and yet neuertheles them selfes hold (through
the pleasaunt eloquence, of their finely penned talke)
obtayne very muche commoditie, of their paynesfull
trauayle. Other soms beying moued, with periculer
enmityes and hatred of Tyranttes, or elles fallen in-
to unmeasurable slaterye, with praysing of Princes,
Cyties, & priuate persons, dyd through lkyfull know-
ledge of wryting, blase and extoll farre aboue truthe,
thinges that by them selues were symple & of no eli-
macion. But I in contrarie wyle, haue enterpryzed
to wryte an historie, not receyued of others, unkno-
wen, or elles wanting witnesse, but at this present,
fired and remaining in the memories of the Readers,
and collected with singuler truthe and diligence.
Trusyng, that the knowledge of thole thinges, (be-
ing many and great, and not longe agone happened)
wyll not be unpleasaunt to the posterite. For yf a man
wyll well ponder al the ages synce the time of Augus-
tus, (when the Romayne superioritie was commy-
ted to the arbitrement of one man) he shall not fynde
in all thole. i.e. peres (so many almost perdyre recke-
nes
B.i.

The proheme.

fed betwene Augustus, and Marcus) so duers suc-
cessions in thempire, so variable chaunces and happenes
in the warres either Ciuyle or forcyn, so manie naci-
ons raised vp, so many of our owne and barbarous
Cities destroyed, belides earthquakes and plagues,
the lives also of Princes, and Tyrants so straunge
and incredible, that none or at the leſt verie few like
examples can be founde amongs our elders. Of whiche
princes, ſome of longe tyne remayned in autho-
ritie, other ſome a ſhorte while enjoyed the deminion
þea many of them ſcarcelie entered into honour, and
being onlie named Emperours, lost thempire the ve-
rie same daye they tooke it vpon them. And when by
the ſpace of. ix. yeres, the Cittie of Rome had ſuſtained
more gouernours then for the time ſuſſiced, it came to
paſſe, that many ſtraunge thinges and worthy admi-
raſion chaunced. For the Princes ſomewhat ſtriken
in age, as men expert in ſtrondy affayres, diſprin-
dently gouerne themſelues and their charge.

On the other ſide the yonge men ſeide their
lives in voluptuousnes, inuented and con-
trauided new thinges parly. wherbie it
happened, that the yonge princes, be-
inge of vnlky age and licence, diſalſo
ſolow vnlky ſtudie & maſters. How
these thinges were done, in obſer-
ving a iulf order of the crew
yne and prynes, we will
now declare.

(***)



The contentes of the fyſte booke.



þe Author beginneth his hiftorys
at the ende of Marcus Antoninus
reigne, who was ſucceloz vnto An-
reliuſ Antoninus ſurnamed Pius:
And it behoueth to know, that after
þe opinion of Eusebius in his tables,
Marcus Antoninus was the. viiiii.
Emperour of Rome. But after þe
opinion of other Historiographers, he was the. xvii.
The fyſt was Julius Cesar. The ſeconde Octauius
Cesar, Augustus. The thirde Tiberius Cesar. The
iii. Caius Caligula. The. v. Claudius Cesar. The. vi.
þero Claudioſ Cesar. The. vii. Sergius Galba.
The. viii. Otho Siluius. The. ix. Aulus Vitellius.
The. x. Flauius Vespasianus. The. xi. Titus Vespasianus.
The twelue Domitianus. Of whiche twelue
Huetonius Tranquillus hathe wryten compendio-
ſlye. Paulus Molius ſayeth, that Perua ſucceſſed
Domitian, after Perua Traian, after Traian,
Adrian, after Adrian Antoninus Pius, wþh hys
two Sonnes Aurelius, and Lucius, whome Marcus
Antonius Verus, and Aurelius Commodoſ, his bro-
ther ſucceſſed. Which Marcus Antonius (of whome
preſently the queſtion is) ouerliued the other, and re-
mained ſole Emperour beynge the. xvii. in nombre, ree-
keing Julius Cesar for the fyſte. Of the lignage,
verte, ſcience, and deceaſe, of this Marcus, Hero-
dian ſpeaketh in the begynnynge of this fyſte booke:
aſter whome his Sonne Commodoſ, raigned: beynge
in the beginning, gentle, meeke, and of good diſpoli-
cion. But aſter he had escaped the Treſon of Luci-
lla his owne Syſter, Perenues the Capitayne of his
garde, Maſternus, and Cleander the liuetenaunte
of his armie, he altered to diſſolute and diſhonest lyſe,
and Tyrannie. Wherfore he was poſſoned by Mar-
tia one of his Cœcubones, Letus the Capitaine of hys
Garde, & Electus his principall Thāberlaine: And aſ-
ter at their appayntment, ſtrangled by Marcius.

F I P I D.

C The fyfte booke
of the historie of
Herodian.



Emperour Marcus had The chil-
many daughters, and ii. derne of
sonnes onely, of whome Marcus,
the yonger named Meric. Merilli-
mus, by myshaunce di-
ed in his tender age. The
other named Commodus, Commo-
dus, the fater broughte vp
great diligence and care.
And havyng gotten from
all partes excellente lear-
ned men, waged the with
large stipendes, that they shoulde every man for hys
parte, garnyshe the maners and disposition of hys
sonne. He marayd his daughters at their ryte age,
vnto the best of the Senatours, choosyng to his Son-
nes in lawe, not suche as coulde shew furthe large pe-
degrues of their auncestrie, or suche as baunted them
selues of their great treasoure, but those which excel-
led in perfecte modellie of maners, and Innocencis
of lyfe. For that he esteemed, to be the onely, perfecte,
and stably, rychesse of the mynde.

He forgate no vertue, wherin he exercised not hym The good
selfe: beynge so studious of the antiquite of learning, dispositi-
on, that in the same, he might be compared, to the best ey- on of
ther of the Greekes, or of the Romaynes. For profe Marcus,
hereof, there are many thinges bothe spoken, and wri-
ten, by hym, commen even vnto our tyme. He was so
curteis, that he woulde gently take every commer vnto
him by the hande: not permitting, that any man
shoulde be forbiddyn by his garde, the appzoching vnto
his person. And he onely, amonges all the Em-
perours, vased the study of Sapience, not in woordes, or
knowledge of decrees, but in grauitie of maners, and
continencie of lyfe. Ultherby it came to passe, that the
same age and tyme, brought furthe a great encrease of
wyse men, for comuneely, men are wout to folowe
the

The historie of Herodian

the lynes and maners of their prynces. But now, as touching the notable actes by hym done, aswell at Rome, as elles where, how he behaued hym selfe also, towardes the Barbarous nacions enhabytinge the Casse, and the Northe, the same are contayned in the monumentes of many excellent learned men. Bue those thinges, whiche (after the death of Marcus, by all ages.) I bothe sawe and harde, (whereof many by exerience my selfe knewe, as one trased in common affayres, and prynces businelle) I haue taken vpon me to wryte.

Pan-
nonie.

Adoles-
cence.

Dionis-
sius.

Ptole-
meus.

Antigo-
nus.

Bacchus

CWhyles the olde Emperour Marcus soioured a-
miges the Pannoniens, a very greevous disease came
vpon hym, not onely wozne wyth age, but also soze
broken wyth continual traauale and care. Wherefore,
when he perceyued no remedy but death, he begaunce
greatly to doubt in hym selfe, lest hym Sonne, (who
was but then entered the fyfth yeres of his Adolescen-
cie) eyther throughe behemencie of hys youthe, or el-
les throughe an inordynate lycence, whiche he shoulde
haue after hys fathers deathe, leuyng all good exer-
cise, and stody aparte, wold addycte hym selfe to drons-
kennesse, and superfluous riot. For he knewe well,
that the myndes of yonge men, easly declyne to im-
moderate superfluytie, from laudable and honest dys-
ciplyn. He was troubled belydes, wyth the memory
of many prynces, whiche beynge but yonge men, tooke
vpon them the gouernance of roayalnes: as well of
Dionisius the Tyrant of Sicile, (whose intempe-
rateies of lyfe was so great, that he endowed with ri-
chess rewardes, thiauentours of newe pleasures: as
also of them whiche succeeded Alexander, of Mace-
donie: who dyd so shamefullye and Tiranouslye
raygne, that they purchased to hys kyngedome, a no-
torious obloquy. For Ptolomens, fell into so deta-
stable lyfe, that contrarve to the lawes of the Mace-
doniens, and all the Greekes, he was entangled, with
tharest mariage of hys owne Syster. Antigonus al-
so, (to represent the G D Bacchus) was wonte,
in steade of the Macedonien Diademme and crowne

to

The fyfte booke.

Fol.ii.

to vvere a Garlande of ynis, and for a sceptre, to carye
a thystell. The olde man was verid belydes, wyth
late examples, as of Nero, whos abstayned not from
the murdering of hys owne moother, and made hym
selfe as a laughyng stocke, vnto all the people. He
remembred Domitian, who leste nothynge vn-
done that he thoughte to appertayne vnto extreme Domitia
Crueltye. Wherefore, wapeng wyth hym selfe
thiese ymages of tyranny, he was tolled betwens
hope and feare. The nygh racion of the Germay-
nes, encreased also hys perplexite: for he hadde not
thoroughly broughte them in subiection, but some
he hadde taken into hys frenchedyppre, and the rest, he
had vanquylshed by force of batayle. Many of the
same were escaped, and hydse them selues, for feare
of the prynce. Wherefore he doubted greatly leaste
after hys deathe, they woulde rebelle agayne, in set-
tyng at noughe the youthe of hys Sonne: for he
knewe, the nature of the barbarous people, was to
be stured wyth euery small tryfle. Bynge tur-
mented wthy these troublome lynes of care, he
caused as manre hys friendes, and kyndmen as were
then in his company to repayre vnto his presence, and
at theyr commynge togythers, hauyng commaunded
hys Sonne to stande before them, helysted hym selfe
somewhat vpon hys pylowe, and made this oration
vnto them.

It is not to be meruayled at, that you are sorow The orat
full and penysfe, beholding me in this plighe: for it is clow of
the nature of man, to bewaile the misfortune of other, Marcus.
And those thinges we see with our eyes, doo prouoke vpon hys
muche more compassion and pitie. Belydes this my death bed
reason is commune with you: for in the recompence
of the good wyl I haue heretofoze borne you, I hope
and as of duty luke for a mutuall benevolence at your
handes. And at this presente it is so happened, that I
must make profe, whether I haue in vayne so longe to
sore erbybites honour vnto you, (having you alway-
es in estimacion) and emploied all my diligent studie
towardes your welthe: And you in recompencing the
ame

ame

The Historie of Herodian

came to shewe your selues not hymynedfull of the benesytes you haue receyued: ye see my son whom your selues haue nourished, entering nowe the first boundes of his youthe. And (as it were) in the swoolwe and waues of inc; tall lyfe, wating gouernours: lest ythrough ignorance, beyng drawn from his ryghte course, he acquaynteth himselfe with disordered exercyse. Be you therfore, (for me but one) many fathers vnto hym, in garnyshing his maner, wyth prompting, and minyfiring holosome preceptes vnto hym: for, neyther maye the aboundinge of treasour, satisfie the sensual lustes of tyrannys, neyther can the Emperoure, be assuredly defended by the bande of his garde, enuyroning hys person, except, he haue the good willes of those whom he governeth. For euermore they raigne longe, and peaceably; by whom no feare through cruelty, but loue through gentlenes, is powred into the hartes of the Citoyens: neyther they whome force constrainneth, but those whiche of their free bylles obey, are eynther in doing or suffering, exempt fro all suspicio of slaterie. The same do not at any tyme, (except they be outrageously handeled) grudge, or impugne, the rule of their superiours. But it is very harde for a man, which lyueth in most inordinate licence, to gouerne him self, and bridle his affections. Wherefore, yf ye wilbe Authours of well lyning vnto him, and oftentimes admonythe him of those thinges he presently heareth, ye shal with that one labour, bothe make hym a good prynce vnto your selfes, and all other, and also deserue the participation of our memorie, whiche with this one poynct ye maye make immortall. Whyles themperour Marcus was speaking thiese wordes, his vitall spirite began so soodeinly to fayle, that furthlywth, he was enforced to cease his talke, and syde downe into his bed agayne. Then so greate compassion, perced the heartes of all that were present, that many of them, beyng through sorrowe almost bereft their ryghte senses, rayled a dolorouse clamour. He hauyng languished, onely a day and a nyght after ended hys lyfe: leuynge behinde hym, greate wante, and desyre, of hym selfe, vnto men of

that

The fyrste booke.

Fol. III.

that age, vnto their posterite, a perpetuall renowne of vertue. When the lame of his death, was spredde abroade, an incredible lamentacion was, aswel amon gell the hole armee selfe, as the common people: So that no man within the Romaine dominion, receiued this message, without abundaunt heading of teares. And bewayleng the losse of him, w one accord, some called hym a good fathir, other some a bening Emperour, Certayne a moost balyuant Capitayne, and many a ryghtesus and moderate prynce: And truely, there was nons of them deceyued. Nowe after a fewe dayes passed, when the funerall obsequies were per formed, it seemed good vnto his frendes, to byng the yonge Emperour vnto the army, that he myght, both speake vnto the souldiours, and (as the usage of newe Emperours is) in distributyng of money largely amongest them establyshe theyz myndes, (as it wer by obligacion) vnto him. It was therfore commauded, that the souldiours, accordyng to the olde custome, shoulde repayre togithers in the fielde: After whose alembolie, Themperour Commodus came farthe, and hauing finyshed the diuine ceremonys, ascended them periall thronre, (for the same purpose) in the nyddes of the campe erected: Where hauyng about hym his fathers frendes, (who were many exellent lerned men) he spake these wordes, or muche lyke that ensue.

I am fully perswaded, that the doctour of this ^{The 125} lamite, is comon to me with you: And that you are son of no leesse sorrowfull, then my selfe. For during my fathers lyfe, I never behaued my selfe as superiour vnto you, for that he loued vs all equally, and dyd more willingly call me companion, then Sonne: because he esteemed the one, to be a name of nature, and the other, he reckened to be the participacio of vertue. And often times, he caried me in his armes, whiles I was an infante, deluynered me into your handes, and (as I might saye) gaue me wholy vnto your custodie, and deluyte. Wherefore, I doubt not, but that ye wyll exhibyte vnto me your fauour, for myne eldes, oughte to repute me as their sonne: and myne equalles in age, I

C. J.

maye

The historie of Herodian

may suffly call compaysons in armes: for even so,
dyd my father done vs all as one, & prouyded to have
vs instructed in all erercyces of vertue and leaftynge.
Nowe after hym, hath fortune gyuen vs for a prynce
vnto you: not a straunger, as some hath bene before
me, nor one whiche dauneth hym selfe of a conque-
red Empyre: but I was onelye borne vnto you, and
brought vp in the verye Imperiall Palayce: And as
soone as I was out of my mootheres wombe, thynge-
xall purple receyued me, in so muche that I was no
sooner a man, then a Prince. Wonderynge therefore
these thynges in your myndes, loue & embrase your
ryghtful Emperour, not gyuen, but borne vnto you.
If so my father is taken vp into the heauens, & made
companyon wylle the Goddes: And vntoo vs, the re-
gymente of the earthe, and gouernaunce of mortall
causes doo appertayne. What successe and effect they
shall come vnto, it resteth in yourre power: If ye wyl
therefore, valdauntly fynishe the resyue of the war-
res, and enlarge the Romayne Empyre, vnto y great
Ocean: ye shal not onely purchase vnto your selues,
exeadynge muche glorie: but also, duely requyte, the
memorye of our commune parente. And belue ver-
ely, that he nowe heareth vs, and presently beholdeth
what we doo: And let vs accompte our selues mooste
happye, for that we haue suche a witnesse of our good
dedes. As for the actes, ye haue vnto thys daye, val-
dauntly and prosperously atcheued, are attrayuted vnto
ys prudente gouernaunce: But what you shall
hereafter notablye bryng to effecte wylle me, that is
to saye, wylle a yonge man your Emperour, the same
shall swynne vntoo your selues, as it were, a pe-
culier lame, as well of truthe, as of prowesse: wherby
ye shall bryng myne age in more esymacyon, wylle
executing boldely ure assayres. And the Barbarous
people, beynge in the begynnyng of thys newe pryn-
cypalitee throughlye represed, wylle not hereafter o-
uer boldelye aduaunce them selfes, in despysyng my
youth: but being ones taught by theyz owne peryls,
wyl be restayned and kepte vnder, wyl contynuall
awe

The firste booke

Fol. iii.

awe and feare. When he had thus muche spoken, he
dystrybuted amonges the Souldours, a greate sum-
me of money, (that he myghte thereby confyzme their
heartes faythfull, and louyng towrdes hym) and
then retourned into hys Palayce. By a lytle space af-
ter tyme, all thynges were tyed by hys fathers fren-
des, who were at vs tyme absente wylle theyz prud-
counsayle, gyving hym as muche lybertie withall, as
they thoughte suffycyent, for the preseruacyon of his
healthe. But anone after, certayne of the imperours
housholde crepte by lylle and lylle forwarde, ompt-
yng nothyng vndone, that myghte corrupte the
good dyspolycyon of the yonge Emperoure. For the
table parasytes, who measured felicite by theyz beli-
es, and fylthe lustes, entourmed hym often tyme of
the Cytie pleasures, nowe, recytyng those thynges
whiche were delectable too be hearde, or seene there.
And then ertollynge wylle pryme, the abundaunce of
all thynges. They dysplayed besydes the bankes of
Histria, as bisproffable at all seasons, for y it had no
pleasaunt apple trees, or other fruite, & was enuyonned
wylle contynual colde & cloudes. Whyle thou never, O
Emperour (sayde they) leaue dyngynge of water dig-
ged, & congeled togyther as yle. Whal other mi enioye
the clere well springes, the pleasaunt colde of the run-
nyng ryuers, and the holsome ayre of Italye? By
these alluraynges to wantonnesse, they easlye endam-
med the yonge mans mynde wylle beverente desyre
of thole pleasures. Wherfore furchwyth hauynge cal-
led hys frendes togyther, he dysmyuled not, that he
was verye desyrous of hys natyue countrey: But yet
fearynge to declare, the very cause of hys sodyn alte-
racyon of mynde, he sayned that he stode in greate
doubte, leasle any ryche manne of the nobyltie,
woulde take possesyon, of the Imperiall Palayce:
And thereupon gatheryng vntoo hym a greate po-
wer of me, woulde, as oute of y strongest fortresse, cha-
llenge vntoo hym selfe the princypall domynyon of all
the pyre. For sayd he amonges the people, may easly
be leuied a mighty & approued compayny of yonge men.

The ta-
ble of pa-
casites.

Histria.

Whyles

C.ii.

The historie of Herodian

Whiles he thiese causes moued, (all the rest, hauing their eyes caste upon the earth, with spilt and sorrowfull countenaunce) Pompeianus, (who in age was the moost auncient, and had maried Comodous eldest syster) arose vp and sayed. It is no meruayle, o Sonne and soueraigne, that you are holden wth desyre of your countrey, for the very same desyre of leving oure housholdes, dothe vige and sturre vs also. But we represse that affection, for that chaffaires we haue here in hande, requyre the syngle parte, and lyeth vs more upon to dispatche. As for the pleasures of the Cittye, you shall longer enioye hereafter: And ROME is continually, wher the Emperour sojourneth. Nowe to gyue ouer the warre lately begonne, besydes that it is shamefull, it is also very perillous: for thereby we minister occasion of audaciee, vnto the Barbarous people: who wyll thynke, that we are not departed for cause of recreacio, but that we are fledde being daunted with feare. And vnto your selfe, hewe glozhouse wyll it be, after ye haue vanquished all your enemies, and enlarged the boundes of your Empyre vnto the ocean, to retourne to ROME wth triumphe, and therin, to haue ledde bounde as capuyes, the barbarous kynges and Lordes: for truly after this sorte, in the former woxdes, did the Romaynes, were noble and famousse. There is no cause, wher you shoulde feare that your assayres in the city, are in any hasarde. For every principlall senatour is here present wth you, and the hole army, doth before your eyes defende your Empire: yea, and all your chiefeſt Treasoure, is with vs also. The memorie besides of your father, hath established a ſedfast and perfecte beneuolence towardes you, with all estates: When Pompeianus perſwading hym to the better, had thus muche ſpoken, he did ſomewhat at that preſent, repelle ſe wyll and endear our of the younge Emperour: who ſcarayng the olde mans ſavinges, hauing nothing wherwith he myghe well reſplye, diſmifſed the counſayle: promiſyng, that he would more diligenty at leſure, debate with hym ſelfe thofe thinges. Yet afterwarde (hys ſeruantes and

The fyſte booke 2. vi

Fol. v.

and parafites callynge moſt iniuriously vpon hym) he made no further relation vnto hys Counſailours. But hauyng ſent his letters vnto Admete, and appoſted whom he thought neete, to defende the banckes of Hitter, and reſtraine the attempts of the Barbarous: he cauſed ſurthwith his ſententia to be proclaymed. Thei that were leſt behinde, diligenty exectuted the offiſes appoynted them, and wþin a lytle ſpace, broughte many in ſubiection. And ſome they topned by great gyfthes in frenchedyng vnto them. The whiche was not verye harde to doo: For the Barbarous people beynge naturally greater of minuty, and despiters of all daunger, doþ theri gote what thung wþch invadous, and pyleting of their neigbourours, or elles for an appoynted ſalarye, ſell theirne ſeruaces. The whiche thing Comodous perſeruyng, that he myght with money wherof he had innumerable abundaunce, purchafe hym ſelue ſecuritee, and quiche he deuyed no thing vnto the demanders. Now adone as the ſame of hys ſetting forwarde was ſpedde in the armes, I daevnly a greate ſurre was amonges all the Soldiours, every man desyring to returne vnto ROME, and affecting the pleasures of the citye, to leue the þereina myes countrey. And when it was blisſmen aboude, by repte of purſeuantes and poſtes, that the Emperour was retourning to the Cittye, an incrediblē ſore wandered amonges the common people, ebery man conceyng in hym ſelue, a ſinguler hope of the perouers preſence, and truſting alredy that he wold folowe his fathars ſteppes. Hym ſelue making ſpeade in hys tourney, and paſſyng wþth a certayne ſeruante of pouthe, in his chayre throughe the mydes of all the cityes, was received with princely reverencie and loyall assemblies of the people, & welcomed, as one moſt acceptable, and wþſhed for vnto them. And when he apporched wþgh vnto ROME, the hole Senate, and the Romayne commons, (eche of them conueyng to prevent other) crowned wþch lawells, and eatyng all ſynde of flowers, (that the preſente ſealon of the perouer and minifter) met as farre as they coulde from the ci-

C. vii. tyc

The Historie of Herodiat

ye; their paines notable in the floure of yongh and no-
bilitie of yvrythe. For truly, they loved him with most
seruient affection, beynge borne and brought vp amon-
gra thens, and then polled yngre in the thirde degree
chauyper and regimence of Rome. For of his fathers
lyae he swyng from the chiefech of the Senatours. And
hys mother, Faustina, a Princes wife, the daughter
of Antonius Pius, a niese by her mother vnto Ma-
ria Com dyian, and reffers the Pedegreue of her kyndred, vnto Ma-
modus Traian her grete grandfather. Of this parentage
mother, was Commodus descended vnto whome, besydes the
Antoni, a yonge man of his age, was giuen also an excelleste or be-
utyfull conuentuall, pleasur and shuning beames in hys
eyes, and a yelme and clyned heare, whiche when he
came into the Sonne, dyd so glyster, that manye dea-
ued the same, as he passed by them, to be sprinkled o-
uer wþ golden dulse. Manys also esteemed it a token
of futurite, conjecturing that the raves about the top
of his heade, were by generacion and nature gynen-
vnto hym. The softe heates bespred spangle oute of
hys cheeke, and couered them as it were with flow-
ers. They receyued therfore this such an Emperour,
wþt ioyfull shawtes, and drawing of Garlandes,
and flowers in the way as he passed. After he was en-
teryd into the Citie, vþpdyd and saluted the Temples,
lytle of Jupiter, and then of the other Goddes, and
giuen thankes to the hole Senate, and the Pretorian
Souldiours, for their fidelite obserued towards hym.
he went into chymperiall palacie. For a lewe yeres
after this, he did honourably entrete his fathers fren-
des, and dled their counsaile in all his assayres. Thos
yeres expirde he chmytted the charge of the hole Em-
pyre vnto other, a collituted Capitaine of his garde
an Italian named Decenes a man verie experte and
lyfull in warfare. The same, abusyng the age of the
yonge Emperour, permitted hym to be corrupted w-
sensuall lustes and ruffians. And takyng upon hym
selfe all charge and labourt, ruled the hole Empyre.
There was in the man, an insatiable thylle of me-

The fyfthe booke.

new, so that lyke regarding what he had already gott, he dayly gredely gaped for newe wynges, and gavell a bouriung earnestly to oppresse his acuallacion, y fref-
des of Commodus's father, and to dedigne every noble
and ryche man in suspicyon, that therby, the yonge
man, beyng put in feare, and therby destroyed, hymselfe
myght haue opportunitie and power, to causale the
goodes and possessions, But yet a wrytle, partie the
memorye of his father, and partie the reverence of
hys frendes, dyd restrayne Commodo. And after-
wardes a certayne enuyous fortynne, susperced hym
disposition, beyng as yet good and moderate, so that
it chanced. . Lucilla was eldest syster unto Com- Lucilla
modus. She was fyfte married unto the Emperour Commo-
Lucius Verus, whome Marcus had affecte as his dus el-
felowe in thempire: And by gowing hym his daughter dell Si-
in Marriage, bounde hym byth an inſoluble knot of ſter.
frendeshippe byto hym. But after that Lucius was Lucius
deade, (the habites and tokenes of dignyte, remayning Verus.
as yet byto Lucilla) her fater maried her unto Pomi-
peianus: And Commodus neuertheleſſe permittid Pomi-
her to enioye her former estate and honour. So he
ſuffered her to lyte in themperiall ſeate in the Thea-
tre, and to haue the fyre borne before her, as the aunc-
iente blage was. But after Commodus had marped
Cryſpina, and that it was expediente, to gyue the
fyfte place unto the Emperours wyfe, Lucilla grud-
ged therewat wonderfullie, reckemyng the others ho-
nor, to be her reproche, but yet knowyng, that her
hulbande Pompeianus, entierly loued Commodus,
she durſte not ones make any motion byto hym, of in-
vadyng Thempyre. Wherefore hauyng prooued
the mynde of one Quadratus, a bevere noble and Quadra-
ryche yonge man, (wyth whome alſo it was thought
he had commycted aduoutrie,) he dyd to grefoulye
complayne byto hym of chinsurpe he had receyped,
that he enduced the yonge man, moſte perniciously
to contente, to the bicer undoing of hym ſelle and the
hole Senate.

The Historie of Herodian

**Antonia
nus.**

**Amphi-
theatre.**

**Therac-
tion of
verenes.
Lucilla
and her
cōplices
put to
death.**

For amonges all other of the order of Senatours whi
ch he conlyzed wyp hym in this recerable enterpryse,
he aduised unto hym a certayne yonge man named
Munitianus, of a yonge minde, and loue to make,
whome he perswased to hide a dagger in his bosome,
watche for convenient opportunitie and place; & there
with a loderne assailee Isea Commodus: As for the
rest in distributing of money, Lucilla promised to see
Vito Munitianus thereto, standing in the entrye of
the Amphitheatre, (so he trusted in that darke place
to be well hidden) forth with drewe out the dagger,
and kryed wch a loude voyce unto Commodus, say-
inge: This dothe the Senate sende unto thee. Whiles
he spake these wordes, he was apprehended by them-
selves Garde, and receyued comigne punyshment
for his madnes: beynge by his owne sondres, the Au-
thorit of the schewyng hys myghte, his ement being
rather opened then accomplayshed. This too was the
fynde and chieffest occaison of Commodus hatred a-
gainst the Senate. For these wordes had so perced
hys heart, that he reputed them all his enemys, the
voyce of the yonge man, which wold haue slaine him,
stickynge continually in hys memorie: Perennes
(not onytinge, soe greate an occasion) perswa-
ded thempetur, to put vn to deathe, every one of the
principall malefactours, and suffre not one of them to
remayne a lyue. Into whose possessions hym selfe
makynge invasyon, became without difficultie, the ry-
chess of all men in those dayes. And after Perennes
had diligentlye made inquisition of the sayd Treason,
the very syster of Commodus, wch all the Coniu-
ratours, and all other (whiche any suspicyon had cau-
sed to be apprehended,) were put vnto deathe. Those be-
yng ones dispatched oute of the waye, whos the yonge
Emperour stode in awe of: and who loued hym wch
a certayne fatherly affection, Perennes tooke vpo hym
the custacion of the Emperours person: And having ob-
tained very muche auctorite, compassed incontinently
in hys mynde the occupying of thempire selfe. And so
this purpose he enduced Commodus, to constitute hys
sonnes

The firske booke.

Pos. vii.

sonnes yonge men, beyng capitaynes ouer thyl-
lyrian armes. He gathered together a wonderfull
grete sume of money that he myght wth ryche bribes
and giftes alienate the Pretorian Souldours frō the
Emperour. His Sonnes also, priuelie leuied their po-
wer, to the entent, that asdone as their fathur Peren-
nes had slayne Commodus, they woulde by violence:
take the dominion and rule vpon them. But this con-
spiracie, was bewrayed by a wonderfull and incre-
son of Pi-
dible meane. The Romaines vled to celebrate certaine renes dis-
plaies in the honour of Jupiter Capitoline, wherunto
assembled so grete a multitude of people, as is meete
to resorte at any notable shewe to such a myghty Cite.
The emperour is also accustomed to beholde the same
plaies, and to syl in the Theare with the highe Pre-
tories, whome the order doth verely appoyn. Now whē
Commodus late in Thempetall Thronie, earnestly
beholding the gorgeous preparations for the Trage-
dies, and when the Theare was repleinised with peo-
ple, every mans place according to hys estat beyng
appoynted hym: Sodeinly, before any thing was done
or spoke on the scaffoldes, one in þ habite of a Philoso-
pher, bering in his hāde a clubbe, and hāle naked, ha-
ving a scryppe hanging downe frō hys sholder, came
fursh in a Chariot: And stayeng in the myddes of the
Scaffolde, w̄ his hānde comaunded silence, and then
sayed. This is no syne of playe (O Commodus) neyther
to behold pageantes, for the sworde of Perennes is
hanging ouer thy sholders, and except thou take good
heade, to auoyde it, the daunger is not immynent but
present, and thou arte vndone: for hym selfe here pre-
sent, dothe leue power and money agaynst the. And
hys Sonnes doa solicite Thillirian armes to rebel-
lyon. Whiche vs thou do not preuent, thou arte but
deade. With thiese wordes, (whether the man were
styred therunto with any diuine inspiration, or be-
yng but syngle, was so bolde to purchase hym selfe
therby renoune, or elles hoped to obtayne some grete
rewarde of Thempetur, truely he dyfmayed hym.
The restle whiche were p̄esent also, (aloughē they
D.J. con-

The historie of Herodian

they conjectured that it was not for nought spokē) yet did they sayne not to give credite vnto it. And Perennes commaunded the man furthē to be apprechedē and as a furious and ydle talkatiue felowe to be buried. This rewarde had he for hys intemperate lyberty, but they whiche seined to fauour Commodus, and had tofore detested Perennes, as a man of intollerablie prude, hauynge gotten a conueniente tyme, laboured wth accusacyons, too bryng hym out of conceyt wth themperour. And truelye, so muste it come to passe, that Commodus should escaptē this Treason, And Perennes with hys sonnes be for theyr demerites worthely rewarded. For no longe while after, certayne Gouldours had conueyed priuily from Perennes eldest Sonne, sundrye pieces of moneye, coyned wth the stampe of hys pycure: And thosē, unwares of Perennes (although he wer principal Magistrate) they deliuered vnto Commodus. And hauing opened thole cyrcumstance of the pretended Treason, were with grete giftes recompenced. The night folowing were sent certaine from Commodus, to strike of Perennes head, who was ignoraunt of al this busines, and at that instant leſt lokēd for any ſuche matter. That done, the ſame executyoners, (as they were comaued furthē wth wente vnto hys Son, and making veri hallyſpede, preuented the rumoure of thosē thyngeſ that were done at Rome. At theyr commyng vnto hym, they deluyuered hym frendlie letters from the perour, the which putting hym in great hope, willed hym to returne vnto Rome: wherby he was ignoraunt of all the dryſte, and ſynally of his fathers happe. For ſome of the mellengers, tolde hym that he was called alſo for by hys fathur, who (they ſayde) woulde haue written vntoo him likewyſe, yf he had not ſuppoſed, he would ſuffcyently regarde themperours letters. The poore man beleued it, and althoough he grudged ſomewhat that his enterprize was thus interrupted, yet affyng hym ſelue, in his fathurſ mighte & aucthoritie (whome he thoughte too be as yet in proſperouſe estate,) he prepared him ſelue to returne wth them.

But

The death of Perennes
at that instant leſt lokēd for any ſuche matter. That done, the ſame executyoners, (as they were comaued furthē wth wente vnto hys Son, and making veri hallyſpede, preuented the rumoure of thosē thyngeſ that were done at Rome. At theyr commyng vnto hym, they deluyuered hym frendlie letters from the perour, the which putting hym in great hope, willed hym to returne vnto Rome: wherby he was ignoraunt of all the dryſte, and ſynally of his fathers happe. For ſome of the mellengers, tolde hym that he was called alſo for by hys fathur, who (they ſayde) woulde haue written vntoo him likewyſe, yf he had not ſuppoſed, he would ſuffcyently regarde themperours letters. The poore man beleued it, and althoough he grudged ſomewhat that his enterprize was thus interrupted, yet affyng hym ſelue, in his fathurſ mighte & aucthoritie (whome he thoughte too be as yet in proſperouſe estate,) he prepared him ſelue to returne wth them.

The firſte booke.

Fol. viii.

But alſoone as he approched the borders of Italie, he was flayne by them vnto whome the charge of theſe cutyon was commyted. Thys ende had the fathur & the Sonne: After whom Commodus appointed y. gouernor, chynkyng it to be moze ſure, not to commynt ſo great an aucthoritie vnto one man alone: but deuiding y ſame in y. parties, make it by y mean, the moze weake to rebell againſt the prince. But no long tyme A newe after, there were other Treasons conſpypred agaynt conſpira hym in this maner. There was a certayne Gouldour eſe, named Paternus, bolde in enterpryſong many facy Water- nozous factes. The ſame ſodeinly forſaking y Campe nus. and adioynyng into hys felowſhipp certaine of his co- panyons, gathered in a ſhorte ſpace an huge multy- tude of delperate ruffynes. Fyrſt he deſtroyed bylla- ges and cornefeldes, and than hauyng gotten a great ſumme of money, he ioyned dayly moze bacabondes vnto hym, and by promyſyng them greate rewardes, & calling them to the deuilion of the pray, he brought the matter vnto ſuche poynſ, that they ſemed to haue the aucthoritie, not of theuers, but of luſte enemys. For they occupied great Cityes, and therein brake y conuou gaoleſ, and toke out of prylon wthouſt reſpekte all offendres, whome through thar release and beneſtys, they annexed vnto them. Then they ſpoyleſ wth inuaſyons all Fraunce and Spayne, and wha- thes had taken any great Citie, they would ransake burne and utterly deſace the ſame and than departe. Whercoſ when Commodus had knowledge, he ſentte letters not wanting angry chekkes, vnto the lieuete- nautes of the Countreyes there aboutes, reproouyng theyr cowardyſe, and ther wth comauandyng them to leue an armee, for y ſubduyng of thosē rebellious bacabondes. Which thing when the Ruffines knew, they thought it bett to depart from thosē Countries. Therfore priuily by ſecrete bryches and unkno- wen wayes, they came into Italie, where Paternus conſulted wth his complices, of thiuauion of them- pyce, and other weyghty affayres. For ſeyng althyn- D. y. yes hitheſ

The historie of Herodian

ges hytherunto had prospered wþt hym beyond his expectacyon, he determinyd to attempt some notable enterpryse, or at the least wþle, yf it chaunced amisse, too dye not obscurelye or like a coward. But yet per ceþyng hym selfe, not to haue so greate a power, as shoulde suffyse to resynt Commodus, wþt an approued and chosen armie, (for he knew that Commodus was well beloued of the Romayne people and men of armes) he concluded to worke his seate by crafty conueaunce. And therefore Inuented thys wþle. In the begynnyng of the spryng tyme, vpon an appoynted holy day, þ Romaynes vled to celebrazate a pompe vnto þ mother of þ Goddes. In þ solemnite, the best of euerie mans ryches, and Jewelles, and all thimperyll ornamente, (whych are eyther for matter or worke worthy to be loked on) are wont to be brought furthe, before the Goddesse. And euerie where a lycente to playe, is graunted all men, and too take vpon them the persones of whom it liketh eche man betwene. There is no magistrate or offycer, but he is there reprented in the counterfaytynge of theyz persones by furþe as lyketh so to doo: so that a man can not rashely discerne the true parson from the dysgayled. Thys dyd Maternus recken to be a conuenyente tyme for the close atcheuyng of hys trayterous enterpryse. Truþyng assuredlye, (yf him selfe toke vpon hym the person of one of thumperours garde, and ar mynge hys confederates after the same sorte, mingle them selues amoniges the spearemen, wherby they shoulde be thought to be of thumperours retynewre, no man forsyng the matter) wþt a sodeyne assaulte to lea Commodus. But beþyng betrayed by certayne of hys adherentes that entered into the Cyttre wþt hym, (who grudged that they shoulde her easter accept him not as a Houldyours theyz companyon, but as theyz prynce) before the festyal day were nygh, he was taken and beheded: and all the residue of the same factio, were punished wþ condigne tormentes of death. Powre after the sacrifice was finished, Commodus did with

thankinges.

The fyfte booke.

Fol. ix.

chanskesgeuing pale furthe the feast of the Goddesse: yea and the people beþyng Joyfull for the preseruacyon of theyz Emperour, celebrated mervy that dape. But what the reason is, wherfore the Romaynes do so muche honoure this Goddesse, is semeth not amysse for me to make mention of it, as I haue learnyd out of Histories, especially because that matter is vñknowen vnto moost of the Greekes. The same Image therefore (as they saþe) came downe from heauen, no certayntie remayning of what metall, or by what artificer it was wrought: yea they constaþlye beleaue, it was never made with manes handes. Therfore, they affirme, that it fell downe from heauen into a certayn fylde of Phrygia, the whiche they conjecture to haue the name Pelenuntis, (by the fall of the same Image) Pelenuntis vpon it. For there they saye, it appeared fyfte. Yet do I fynde amoniges other authours, that there be twene Iulus the Phrygian, and Tantalus the Lydian. The bat- was foughten the barayle, eyther beþo for the way or tayle be- rather for þ rauynshing of Ganimedes. And when they twene Iu- had longe foughten, wþt equal strengþy and verþe Iulus þ phri- mayn on boþe sydes slayne) that the name was neuen gian, and vnto the fylde by that calamite. There also (þe report Tantalus is) that Ganimedes beþyng drawen to and fro by the þe Lydi- handes of his brother and louer, was depynted of hys an- lyse: And beþyng taken away, a fable was inuyned for Ganimedes the comfort of his louer, that he was endowyd by Iu- des. piter hys rauylher wþt many dyntre honours. In that fiede Pelenuntis, (wherof I haue spoken) dyd the Phrygians in tymes pale worshyppe, and cele- brate the ceremonys of the infernall Goddesse even at the ryuer of Gallus, or the whiche the women prye. The ry- uers of the Goddesse are surnamed: But whan the Romayne Emperye increased, (an Oracle beþyng re- ceyued that the Emperye shoulde be augmented to the vñtermosse, yf the Romaynes woulde transperte the Pelenuntian Goddesse vnto them,) There were Em- bassadors sente into Phrygia, too reuyze the Sta- synuntia- tute of the Goddesse, the whiche was easly geaunid Goddesse vnto them, because they saye that the Romaynes were

D. iii.

Were

The Historie of Herodian

Were of kyndred unto the Phrigians, beyng descended of Aeneas the same countrey manne. When as therefore, they hadde broughte the ymage in Hyppe unto the verye mouthe of Tiberis, whiche the Romaynes then used in steade of a hauen, sodenly with a certayne dyvine power, the Hyppe stoke faste, neyther coulde it be remoued wyth anye strengthe of the people drawynge at it, vntyll a Trestall byrgyn came thither. The same beyng sclaundered, that she had deflowred her virginitye, (whiche oughte evermore to be inviolatly preserued) fearyng condempnacion, instantly increated the people, that they woulde commyte the iudgemente of her, unto the Pelynuncian Goddesse. That ones obtayned, she bounde the maste of the Hyppe wyth her gyrdell, mooste humbly desyrringe, that vs the Goddes knewe her an uncorrupte virgyn, she woulde commaunde the Hyppe to come forwardes. And when she hadde so sayde, she drewe the gyrdell in her hande, and the Hyppe beganne to folowe. So dyd the Romayne togither wonder at the manysell diuinitie of the God heade, and the innocencie of the virgyn. But this much haue I hyther unto treated of the Pelynuncian Goddes, peraduenture sumewhate more tediouslye then it behoues, but yet lyke to byngye vs unprofesstable knowledge vntis them that are not throughlye skylfull in all the Romayne assayres. Powre Commodus hauyng escaped the treason of Maternus, dyd wyth a greater Garde strengthen hym selfe, and came verye scaldome abrode, conuainc mooste parte of the tyme in the Suburbes, or in hys Principall Manours farre from the Cite, and vitterlye ablayned from sytynge in iudgemente, and all Imperiall actes. At the same tyme, a wonderfull plague vexed all Italie: but it was mooste furious in the cypsilence. tye of ROME, as in a place replenysched wyth people, and receauyng straungers from all partes of the worlde. Wherby there happened a mervaylouse grete morreyne of menne and beastes. Then Commodus

The fyrete booke.

Fol. x.

modus departed unto Laurentum, (for so had some conninge Physicians counstyled hym) because it Laurent was a more coulde Regyon, and shadowed wyth sum many wodes of Laurell, of whome also the Countrey hathe hys name. For they sayde that the saunce of the Laurells, and the plesauntelle of The rethe shadowes, dyd greate preuyl to the ausy, medye a dyng of the contagion of the ayre. And therefore gainst in the Cite selfe, by the Physicians aduysementes, the pest manye stopped theyr eares and noses wyth swete lence, oyntementes, and used dayly delectable vapors and perfumes, that the poyses of the senses shoulde not admynre into them anye pestiferouse smell, and vs they receyued anye, that the perfumes wyth a greater strengthe shoulde vanquishe the same. But neuerthelesse the sycknes encreased, descrepeng eyry where bothe men and cattell. Bea the dyd also greate famyne vere and oppresse the Cite, by this occasion. There was a certayne Byrgyan named Cleander, of that sorte of menne that are sonde of penye by Cryers: The same beyng put to lerance Cleander in the Emperours house, encreased gretelye in fforoure wyth Commodo, and was enhaunsed unto so hvghe dignytie, that he alone obtayned the custodie of the Emperours parson, the charge of hys Chamber, and the gouernance of hys Garde. And he and perte dyd besydes sturre hym to hope of Empire. Wherfore hauyng gathered together a grete somme of money, he boughte a wonderfull quantite of wheate, and the same he hadde costely sherte vp, trusyng that he shoulde wynne the harts of the people and the armes, vs that he releuued wyth large gystes, thole that before were in greate penurye of necessarye foode. He had also bylded a verye large schole for exercysles, and many common bates, that he myght by that meanes allure the people unto hym. But the Romaynes were offendyd wyth hym before, imputynge all the cause of thys deache unto hym onely.

W. 111. And

The Historie of Herodian

End deteyning him, as man unsaciablie of rychedesse, thei
Theatre: ffirst assembled by embushmentes unto the Theaters,
and afterwarde (Commodus beynng in the Suburbes)
sodeynly they came all thither, wryth huge clamors,
deyniunding Cleander vnto death, and when the hoie
suburbes were fulled with noyse and tumulte, & Com-
modus hym selfe was at his accustomed pleasures in
an upper chamber, ignorant of all that was donne,
(Cleander perdy had so provided) sodenly beyonde all
mens expectation: the Emperours horlychest armes
brake furthe with violence by the commandemente
of Cleander, driving downe and wounding every man
they met. The people beynge on foote, & without wea-
pon, were not able to sustayne the brunte of the hor-
sman: Wherefore with hasty fleyng they retayned into
the Cyte, where many of them were destroyed, not so-
nely those whome the horsemen slewe wryth weapon,
but also they whome the horses had wryth theyr feate
troden downe, & thei that fought eyther in the prese of
the forefalen, or elles amone the horses. The horsemen
so pursyng them without any impedimente vnto the
gates of the Cyte, beseeched a greate parte of the peo-
ple. But they that remayned within, knowing the ca-
lamyte of theyr feendes without, shutte theyr doores
and gate up into the rooses, and toppes of their hou-
ses, and threwe downe vpon the horsemen bothe sto-
nes and royles. Theer by was the fortune sodenly chaun-
ged, when no horsemans durke at that presente ftryure,
all the people fghting safly from aboue against the.
Wherefore many of them beynge wounded when they
coude no lenger endure, turned their backes and fled:
many of them were also hable through the contynual
and thicke fallynge of weapones, and many striken
from theyr horses, whiche foulderid amone the sto-
nes that were throwen downe. Me, and the footmen
whyche had stations within the cyte, came to rescue
the people against the horsemen, whome they utterly
doteifid. And althoughe this were a Cypryl batayle,
yet durke no man for feare of Cleanders power de-
clare it vnto Commodus, vntyll his eldest Syster na-
med

The fiste booke.

Fol. xi.

med Fadilla vnto hym (for the approchynge vnto his
presence was easie for hys Syster) wryth her heare
loose fel downe on her knees, defourmed wryth a mour-
nyng garmente, and sayde. Truly (O Prynce) why-
les ye ly here in peace, ye are in extreme peryll. And
we that are of your bloude are almooste vndone. The
people of Ryme are destroied. The most parte of your
armye is consumed. And thole thynges we thoughte
not to suffre of y Barbariens, the same doth our own
housholde seruauntes vnto vs. And they vpon whom
you haue bestowed mooste bountifull benefyces, the
same are youre mooste extreme enemys. Cleander
hath armes the people and Souldours against you,
amonges whome he is of some abhorred, and of some
entierely beloued. Yet are they both in armes, do co-
myt murde wryth them selues, and fyll Ryme with
Cypryl bloude. But vpon oure neckes wyl the myl-
rye of hothe compaines lyghte, excepte you do deliuer
vnto death wryth all haste, a mooste pernycyous & wry-
ked Seruaunte, whch hath bene aucthour of so greet
a calamyte vnto them already, and entendereth shorly
to be se vnto vs. Whyles she thus sayde, she rente her
clothes, and manye that were presente, hauynge ta-
ken courage of the womans woordes, dyd put Com-
modus in feare also. He beynng amased, and dreading
the daunger, not as Immynente, but presente, com-
maunded Cleander to be called hastely vnto hym, not
somewhat was tolde themperoure. And as he came
besyde hym, themperoure commaunded hym too be
apprehended, and too haue hys head strycken of: And The pe-
beyng set vpon a Speare too be carpied aboue. Kno-
wyng that he shoulde shewe vntoo the people a plea-
sante and desyred syghte. Thus was thys my-
chyeape appeased, and the syghte on eyther syde allwa-
ged. For the Souldours when they sawe him dead,
for whom they fought feared the indygnacyon of the
Emperour, whom they perceived too be deluded, and
that nothing was done by hys commaundement. The
people on thother parte accoumpted the selges satissid
E. i. wryth

The historie of Herodian

wyth the death of the begynner of the mischiefe. The chyldren also of Cleander, (for he had twoo sonnes) & all his frendes were at one tyme slayne, and theyz bo- dies being drauen through the Citie, and most filthe- ly ordered, were at the last thowen into the common synkes of the Citie. This was the ende of Cleanders destenies. And in hym onely mans nature, can (as I myghte say) boldely bragge, that a man may be aduan- ced, from mosse byle and lowe estate, vnto the hygheste type of dignite, and being so exalted, fall downe in the leaste and sodeyne momente of fortune. Then Com- modus, (aloughhe he feared that the people woulde moue some newe tumulte againste hym) yet by hys frendes perswasyon, retourned into the Citie. And being receyued wyth ioyfull shoutes and assemblyes.

The begynninge of h̄ people, entered into thimperial palayce. And cer- ninge of tainly so many perylles beinge past, he began from Commo- chencfurthe to trust no creature: but to destroy now dus tyra- this, i now that man, gynnyng credyte vntoo euerye false accusayyon. He toke besides into his frendshyp, no man in whome was any vertue remaynyng, but dyd withdrawe his mynde equallye from all good stu- dye. For the vnbrydeled lustes of the bodye, dyd bothe day and nighte oppresse him wyth most greuous bondage. He remcued as a spie from his gate, every man whom eyther goodnes, or any meane and honest qua- litie, did beautifie. But slaues and suche as vised most filthye maners, hadde hym as wholly addicted vnto them. He vised alsoe aboue measure cartynge and sles- ing of beastes. For the which exercyses, the flattier ring Parasites extolled him with fame of sozitude. There by he behayed him selfe in those thynges more disho- nestly, then became a sober & prudent Prince. At that season were apparaunte in the skye, certayne prodig- oule to- yse. Prodigy- oule tokens in h̄ yse. tokens in h̄ yse.

Carting.

gyouse tokens. For starres appeared contynually by daye lyghte, and manye of them beyng stretched out in lengthe, semed too hange in the myddes of the ayre. Beastes besydes of all kynde were broughte furthe, not obseruyng theyz nature, wyth mon- strous shape of bodye, and membres notynge agree- able.

The fyrste booke.

Fol. xli.

able. But the greatest calamytie partely brought pre- sente doloure, and especyally afterward wyth moost myserable conjecture, dyd put all men in feare. For when there had neyther anye shoures or cloudes, sa- uynge onely a lytle earthquake preceeded (whether it were by chaunce wyth lyghtenyng in the nyghte, or elles wyth anye fyre kyndeled in the earthe) the hole Temple of peace was sodeynelye burnte. The The Te- whyche worke, of all other in the Cythe was grea- ple of fesse and moosse heawtyfull, and of all the Temples peacs bur- moosse ryche, and gorgyouslye buyldeed, and ador- ned wyth muche golde and syluer. For almooste e- verye man broughte hys substaunce thither, as in- too a treasourye. And therby the fyre so ragynge

in the nyghte, broughte manye that were riche in to extreame pouertye. Wherfore all men bewayled the common calamytie openlye, and euerye man la- manted hys owne losse pryuateleye. When all the Temple was consumed, bearey manye the heaw- tyfuller buildinges of the Citie were enflamed with fyre also. Amonges the which y temple of Westa was one, so that the Palladiu was sene, the which the Ro- maynes do chieflly worship and kepe secrete, beyng broughte (as they saye) from Troye, and at that time The Te- first lythens it came into Italye, sene of all men. For ple of Westa.

the Westall Virgines, hauing with muche difficultye sauued it, carayed it through y frete named Sacra via, vnto thimperours palayce. Many the goodlyest par- tes besydes of the Citie were burned. And the fyre ragynge many daies was not ceased, before that sodaine shoures quenched it. Wherfore all men that time re- fered the hole matter vnto the Goddes, by whose wil they thought the fyre to be begon and ended, interpre- ting warres (y did ensue) to be signified by h̄ burning of y Temple of Peace. The which conjecture of things the hap did afterward verifie. For (y Citie being ver- ed with manye greuous discōmodities) the people dyd not (as they were wonte) beholde Commodus bene- volentlye, but euerye one imputed the cause of theyz miserye vnto hys dyssolute and pernycyouse vices.

E. G.

503

The historie of Herodian.

for his wickednesse was not hydden from them neyther wolde he it shoulde be kept close. But those thinges that were in his house committed, not withoute infamye, the same he feared not to blase and blowe a brode. He waxed so insolent, that he abandoned the name of his father, and for Commodus the sonne of Marcus, commaunded himself to be called Hercules the son of Jupiter. And leueng aparte the apparelle of the Romayne princes, he ware a Lions skinne, bea ringe in hys hande a clubbe, and couered hymselfe with purple, and clothes wouen with golde, not withoute the derysyon of all men. For in that one garment, he represented the wantonnesse of women, & the prouesse of noble men. Thus did he daily behauie himself. He also chaunged the names of y monethes, & for their auncient tycles, apoynted them newe of his owne surnames, of the whiche manye were referred vnto Hercules, as vnto one mosse purstaunt. He caused also Images to be erected vnto hym throughoute the Cyte, and amonges them, one in the Courte of the Senate, the whiche helde a bowe bente, that the Images them selues, sholde shewe terroris and manaces. The which Image the Senate after his death pulled downe, and for it erected agayne the Image of lybertye. But Commodus (when he coulde not alwage and brydle hymselfe,) taking vpon him to shew furch pageantes vnto the people, promyssed that he would with his owne handes, shew before them all kynde of wylde beastes, & tryue by a synguler contencion, with every valiaunt yonge man. When the rumor of these tryalles was spredde abroade, there assembled people out of all Italy, and other nighe nations to behold that syght, whiche they had never before seane, nether by talkie herde Agyptee of of. For his hande was reported to be so stedfasse, that what so euer he had throwen or shotte at wþh darte dus. or arrowe, the same wold he assuredly strycke. And he Parthies retayned daily about him mosse approued archers of & Pumi- Parthia, & Pumydyane syngers, all the whiche hym midens. selfe in cunnyngre farre excelled. Nowe when the daye of this Pageande was come, there was buylded in the myddes

The syste booke.

Fol.xiii.

middes of the Amphitheater, a gallerie for Commo- dous. In the which he myght runne rounde about, lest that fyghting beneth with the beastes, he shold be in daunger. But by casting his dartes fro aboue, as ouer of a lase place, he shoulde rather shew his cunninge of thowring then any valiautnesse. In pursuing them he stake hastes and hyndes, and other horned beastes be sydes bulles, and preuenting the with a swyfte course ouerthrewe them, by mosse assured strokis. The Lyons and Pathers wþh other fierce beastes of that kynde, runnyng rounde aboue he slewe with dartes Pathers from aboue, so that no man saw the seconde darte thowen at any of them, nor any woude but that was dead ly. For as soone as the beast ones sturred, he wounded him eyther in the sofe heade, or at the hart, blyng none other scope, nor appoyntinge to thowre at anye other parte of the bodye, so that the beaste wþh the verye strokis, was beraste hys lyfe. There were beastes besydes gotten from all partes of the earthe. And the dyd we beholde with sure eyes, those thinges we meruayled at in paynting. For ouer of India & Ethyope, and out of the South and Northe, (what so euer were knownen in the former worldes,) the same dyd he borthe shew furthe, and slea at one tyme, every man beyng abashed, at hys so stedfasse a hande, and at the dartes neuer saylyngre stroke. He also stroke wþh dartes, Dystriches of Hawritany, the whiche (through the swyftnes of their feate, and as it were wþh layle of their winges) ranne very swifly touching the toppes of their neckes, & there withall strikenge of their heades, and the hinder parte of the necke (wher the stroke lighted) beyng cutte of, they would a lytle whyle contynewe theyz course, as thoughe they were yet lyuynge. Pea and a Pather (the whiche having with a very behemet course overtaken a man) thruste into the Theater (seamed redy to deuoure hym) he wounded so sodeinly that the beaste beyng kylled, he preserued the man, preuentynge the edge of her teathe, wþh the sharpe bedde of hys darte. He also slewe an hundred Lyons, brought furthe of a caue with like many strokis, their bodys

E.iii.

Inde & Ethyope

Th Historis of Herodian

bodys so layde in order, that they myghte easely be nombrd, no darte beyng thowen in bayns. These thynges therefore that were hytherbnto don (aloughhe they seamid bntmeate for a Prynce) yet because they declared a certayne fortynesse and cunynge deserved commendacion of the people. But when he enteryd naked into the Amphitheater, and wearyng harnesse supplied the nombre of the sworde players, then appeared a lamentable syghte to the Romaynes, that theyr noble Emperour, after so manye tryumphes of hys father and ancessours, dyd not onely beare armes appertaynyng to the Empyre agaynst beastes, but dyd also spotte the chieffesse dignyte wth moolle sylthye apparell. In syghtyng he easely conuynced hys equalles, wthoute beyng ones wounded, euery manne wth drayng hys force, and acknowlegynge hym rather an Emperoure then a sworde player. And he fell into that furye that he intended to forsake the Imperiall Courte, and to remoue into the schole of defence. Neither suffered he hym selfe anye more to be named Hercules, hauynge adopted the name of an excellente sworde player, the whyche a lyttle before dyed. Pea hauyng taken the heade from the Colossus greate Image called Colossus that represented the lymlytude of the Sonne, (beyng verye moche wth hypped of the Romaynes) he putte thereon the pycature of hys owne heade, and wrate at the foote thereof, not hys accustomed tytles of the Empyre and hys father, but for the name of Germanyen, he put in the banquylher of a thordande Maystres of defence. But it was requyrsyd, he shoulde ones synyshe hys madnesse, and the Cytye he delyuuered from hys Tyrannye. And that in the begynnyng of the yere, the whiche daye the Romaynes holde verye solempne, dedicatyng it vnto Janus the anciens GOD of Saturne Italye. Of the whiche Regione, thei reported Saturne Jupiter, nus (beyng expelled by hys sonne Jupiter) to be a

The fyrete booke,

Fo. xiii.

straunger, and bicause that he there hydde hym selfe, the name of Latium to be genē vnto it. Wherfore the Latium, Romaynes do fyrete celabrate, after theyr custome the feastes of Saturne, and then the begynnyng of the Saturtere. The Image of thys GOD is wroughte with nus sea- two faces, as of hym by whome the yere begynneth, tis. and in whome the yere endyth. When the Cite helde (as I sayd) thys daye with solempnitye, in the whiche the Romaynes do sende one to an other newe yeres New yeres, and all sortes of presentes, and the magistrates res gyf- wrytewyfull scarlette, (all menne wth gladnesse res celebrytynge the same daye) Commodus determinyd to come abroade, not oute of the Emperours pa- lace (as the olde vylage was) but oute of the verye schole of defence. And for gorgyouse apparayle and Imperiall purple to go armed in the compayne of the Romayne people. Whiche hys counsell, when he hadde declared vnto Martia one of hys concubynes, Martia vnto whome he opened the greatest partes of hys le- cretes and esteameid her almosse as hys wyfe so that all honours lauyng the fyre were borne before her as Empresse) the woman hauyng perceaued hys so dyshoneste entente, fell vpon her knees be- fore hym, incessantlye desyryng hym wth ma- nye teares that he woulde not lustre the Maistre of the Romayne Empyre to be defyled, or committre hym selfe so daungerouslye vnto myschewouse and despe- rate personnes. But when he coulde nothyng a- nayle she departed wepyng. And he hauyng cal- led vnto hym the Capytayne of hys armie named Letus, and Electus hys Chamberlayne, comman- ded theim to prepare all thynges for hys lodgyng the Letus. same nyghte in the schole of defence, that he myght in Electus the mornynge goo from Nunc to sacryfycē, and hewe hymselfe armed vnto the people of ROME. Thei endeououred wth manye intercessions to dyllwade hym from enterprysyng anye thyng vndecente to a Prynce. But Commodus chauffed wth anger

straunger,

Cly.

The Historie of Herodian

nger hauyng commaunded them to auoyde hys presence returned into hys chambre that he myghte, (as he was accustomed) slepe at noone. And there takyng into hys handes a thynne boke made of the bark of a tree and soldyng to eynther syde, he wrote in the same all those he intended to sea the same night. Of whom Martia was fyre, and next vnto her Letus and Electus, and after them a greats number of those that bare moost rule in the Senate. For he determinyd to destroye all tholde men that were hys fathars frendes (least theyz auchozptye shoulde hynder hys werkynnes) and to dystribute their goodes amonges þ Doubdyours and sword players, þ the one company shoulde wyth strengthe defende hym, and thoþher wyth pleasures delyte hym. The same boke so wrytten he threw downe on hys bedde, not suspectynge that anye man woulde enter into the chamber. But there was aylte Rose, yet of the sorte of them, that beyng clothed wyth no garmentes, sauing suche as are decked with golde and precyouse stones are wonte too be the pleasures of euerye delicate Romayne. The same Rose was so entyrelve beloued of Commodus, that he often tyme laye wyth hym, and was called Phylocommodus (the name it selfe declarynge the Princes affection). Hys chylde by chaunce playinge (whan Commodus was occupied in the bayne and ryottinge) entered into the chambre, and takyng the booke in hys hande to playe wythall, wente oute of the doores, and by chaunce mette with Martia, who for that she loued the Rose, syrke embrased and kyssed hym and toke the booke oute of hys hande, fearyng least the chylde shold through his infancie, vniwares empayre thinges of Importaunce. Afterwarde knowyng the hande of Commodus, and moued wyth desyre too reade it, when he perceyued the pernyctyouse ententes therin contained, and her selfe to be syrke mencioned, Letus wyth Electus to folowe, and fynally so great a murye of others lykely to ensue, she inwardly lamented sayinge. Ah Commodus, are these the rewardes of frenþy and loue. Hauie I thus deserued of the after

Philocodus.

I haue

The frst boke.

Fol. xv.

I haue so many peres abydden thy chekkes and drenkennes? But these thinges shall not so prospere with the vndyscrete and dronken person agaynste a sober & well adysled woman. Then she had thus spoken she called Electus (wyth whome she was accustomed to talke famlyparelye, because he was the Emperours Chamberlayne, and wyth hym she was also supposed to haue carnall compayne) and deliuered the boke vnto hym, saying. Welolde Electus what banquet we shoulde haue bene at this nyght folowing. He beyng astenved wyth the readyng of it (for he was an Egypcyan boozie, stoute, fynyshe, and quyckely syzed to anger) sent the boke closely sealed by a trusty trend of hys vnts Letus to reade. The whiche also abashed wyth it, came furthwyth vnto Martia, seynnyng that he woulde consulte wyth her, concerning the preparacyon in the schole of defencie as the Emperour had commaunded. Usynge therefore thys glose, they determinyd to doo, or suffre some thing out of hande, knowyng that there was no tyme of deferryng the matter. They consented at latke that the feate shoulde be wroughte by poyson. The whiche Martia tooke vpon her to mynster speadelye. For she was wonte too prepare drynke for hym, and to gyue hym the cuppe that it myghte be thoughte more sweter beyng deliuered from hys louer. She gaue vnto hym therefore as he came from the bayne poyson myngled with bervz pleasaunte wyne in a goblet. And he hauynge caughte a chyse in wasshyng hym selfe and huncryng, dranke raschelwe the drynke as of custome proffered vnto him. Wherewyth beyng immedeately troubled wyth atche in hys heade and desyrous of sleape, (supposyng it came by laboure,) gaue hym selfe to resse, Electus and Martia commaunded incontynentlye euerye man to departe to hys owne house, leaste they shoulde dysurbe the Emperoure hauynge nede of sleape, whiche he was accustomed also to doo at other tymes throughe Immoderate dronkennes. So when he bathed hym self, or elles fell to banquetinge, he kepte no certayne tyme of sleape.

F.i.

The

The Historie of Herodian.

The sensualites risinge and muche differynge one from another, so constrained the man, (yea sometyme vnwylling) to serue th̄. Wh̄ he had soz a smal tyme rested him selfe, and the behemency of the poyson was now entered his stomake and belye, a gydnes cōbzed his head, and vomyng furthwth folowed, cyther through the meat ȳ he had before largely eaten, or the drinckyng of muche wyne that resyssed the poyson, or elles throughe the usage that Princes obserue in taking of medicines before they eate any meat, for feare of poysonyng. But when he had vomited very muche they fearynge leaste all the venyme beyng auoyded, he would thereby recover, and the commaund theym al together to be slayne, perswaded for a great reward a certayne bolde and stoute yonge man named Narcissus, to strangle him in hys Chaumber. Thys ende of life had Commodus, when he hadde raigned after his fath̄er in the Empyre. xiiii. yeres. A man of al other Emperours most noble, & of all men in ȳ age the most beautifull. But too speake of his prowes & fortitude he might in ȳ be preferred to any other, especallye in sure strikyng that he had thowen at. Neuertheles he defyled (as before is tolde) all the state of hys lyfe wyth abhomynable byces.

Narcissus.
Commo-
dus strā-
gled to
death.

The ende of the fyſt booke.

The Argumente of the ſeconde booke.

In the ſeconde booke is declared how Pertinar was chosen Emperour, howe longe time he raigned, & how he was slaine by the men of armes whiche tolde the mypre afterwardes vnto Julianus. How Seuerus became Emperour by the delars of Niger. And howe Julianus was slayne, and the death of Pertynex reuenged by Seuerus.

E(***).D

C The

The Seconde Booke of the Historie of He- rodian.

Fol. xvi.



Her that Commodus was strangled (as we haue in the former Booke declared) the murdererſ extensing to conceale the facte, and to deceaue ȳ Emperours garde, deliniered the body wrapped in an olde couerlet, vnto. ii. trustie and faythfull seruauſ to carry furthe of the Palace, as it were ſome ſtuffe that pefſered the chambre. And they that bare it paſſed throughe the myddes of the watchemen, of the whiche ſome were dronke and ſlepte, letting their halberdes fall out of theyz handes. The other whiche were awake, neglected the fardell whiche they ſuppoſed not to appetaigne vnto theyz charge. Then they ſente the princes bodye, (thus conueyed by ſtealthe, and in the nyghte layde in a wagon) vnto a place named Arisbeus. This ended, Letus, Elec- Appo- plerie, tus, and Martia, after they had longe conſulted what was beſte to be donne, at the laſte conſcluded to ſpreade a rumoz of his deathe, that he ſodeyvalye fell into an Appo- plerie. The whiche bruite they knew wold ſoone be credytes, because it was euidently knownen that he ofteintymes accuſtomed to ſtuffe him ſelue with immoderate ſuperfluicie of metes. But fyſte of all it ſeamed good vnto them, to chole for Emperour ſome aged, reuerende, and modēt persone, by whome themſelues myghte be in safetie and all other exempt from cruell tyranyne. And hauyng longe conſulted they founde no man ſo worthye as Pertinar. This Pertinar was an Italian borne, famouſe at home & abrode throughe his valyannte actes, & manyfolde victories obtayned againſte the Germaynes, & Barbarvens of the Dry- Pert- ente.

F. ii.

ente, and he onely remayned alyre of all the gracie counsaylors, that were leste vnto Commodus by his faiher, and vnto hym amounges all the capitaynes his Companions, he had shewed mosse honoure and reverencie. Being yet safe, cyther for that Commodus feareb hys grauitie, or elles dyslymuled because of his povertye. For this also dyd amplyfve hys renowme, that hauyng mosse auctorite of all men, yet of all men he seamed the pooreste. Unto this Pertynar therfore wente Letus, and Eleucus, with a fewe of theyr complices aboute mydnyghte, whyles all men slepte. And finding his gates locked thei called vpon the porter. Who when he opened the gate, and sawe Letus the chyse Captayne & the souldyors presente with hym, beynge sore dismayed wythall, ranne and tolde Pertynar. He furthwyth commaunded them to be lette in, layenge that anon woulde happen the myschiese he had vnto that daye loked for. He was of so constante a mynde, that he moued not ones from his bedde, nor chaunged hys countenaunce. But wyth a bolde and stoute frowmacke nothyng abashed spake vnto Letus and Eleucus when they were entered (althoughe he beleaued they were sente to sea hym) these wordes. I haue of longe tyme every nyght loked for this ende of my life, the whyche onely am remaynyng of all hys fathers frendes. Wherefore I meruayled for what purpose Commodus so longe deserred the matter. Why do you therfore thus rayne and not execute that ye are commaunded and delyuer me from this dolefull and continual dread. Unto those wordes answered Letus sayng. Cease (q he) to talke of thyngis vnworthy youre selfe and your former lyfe, we came not to deslyze your deathe, but the preseruacion of oure selues and all the Romaine Empyre. For the Tyrante is dead, and hath suffered condigne punyshmente, receauyng at oure handes those thinges he intended to do vnto vs. And we are commen hitche to deliuer the Imperiall power vnto you, whom onely of all the senate for temperaunce of lyfe, auctorite, age, and grauyte of maners, we knowe

knowe to be beste & entreyly beloued & reverenced of the people, Trustyng that we doo, shalbe acceptable vnto the, and profitable to oure selfes. Unto whome Pertynar answered. Leue of (sayd he) thus to scorne and mocke an olde man and so repreoue him of timorousnes, entendyng syfste to deceave, and after to sea hym. Why q Electus sayng that you do not credyte vs, take this lytle hooke (for surely ye knowe the hāde of Commodus) reade it your selfe and ye shall perfectlie perceave what great daunger we haue escaped: neyther shal ye fynde in our wordes any temptation, but trustyng reporte of truthe. The whyche when Pertynar had done, chynkyng it besse to beleaued them whyche had bene alwayes theretofore hys especiall friendes, and vnderstandinge all the matter, he commyted hym selfe wholye vnto theyr power. It seamed good therfore vnto them to go syke vnto the hooche and to assayle the myndes of the Souldyours, whome Letus promised easly to wynde vnto his sentence, because he knewe that hys auctorite (beynge theyr Captayne) woulde somewhat preuayle amounges them. Wherefore as many as were presente hasted them vnto the Campe, when muche of the nyghte was passed nexte before the fyfthe daye of Januarie. They sente besydes trustyng messengers to spredde abrode the rumor that Commodus was dead. And that Pertynar (whyche shoulde be Emperour) was nowe goryng towardes the hoste. That bruyte beynge ones blouen, sodeynly all the people (as they were madde) ranne throughe the streates. All menne retayned, and euery manne seuerally wente to tell hys frende, whyche hadde eyther dynastrye or rychesse remaynyng: for vpon them depended the greateste daunger, whyle Commodus lyued. They wente therfore vnto the Temples to render thanckes vnto the GODDESS, talkyng togidher dyuersely: Some sayde the Tyrante is destroyed: some other the sworde player. Pea manye spake thynges moxe detestable.

The Historie of Herodian.

And suche wordes as feare had tyl that dave represt
in silence, the same did thei now thughe licencie fre-
ly gosen bluster oute. A great parte also of the people
ranne hastely to the campe, fearinge lest the menne of
armes wold not willyngly accepte Pertinar for Em-
perour. For thei thought that a moderate Prince was
not verye grattfull vnto the Souldiors, who were ac-
customed to serue tyrrany, and exercysle all visience.
Wherfore they ranne in diuerse plumpes vnto the
Campe for to cōpel them to obedience. And when they
were there arrived, Letus, and Electus, w Pertinar,
came thither also. And (the me of Armes beyng called
together) Letus said thus vnto them. Q̄modus your
Emperour is deade of an Appoplerie. No other man
was the cause of hys death then himselfe. For whē we
in bayne gaue him good and holsome counsel, he or-
deringe himselfe as you all knowe he accustomed, was
sodeynlye choked with ouermuche meate and drincke
so that he perlyshed by the ende hymselfe sought. For
all men dye not by one kynde of death, but vnto many
men there are dyuers causes, and yet all tende to one
ende. But touching hym, we and the people of Romē
haue brought vnto you, a man graue in age, moderate
in lyfe, and verye experie in warfare, whose balyaunte
prowesse, you that are aunciente Souldiors, haue by
experience knownen. And the resle haue iudged (beyng
so many veres ruler of the Cyte) not onely worshielst
honour, but also admiracion & wāder. Wherfore for-
tune hath not alone lyuē him as a prudēt Prince,
but also a moste longing father vnto you. Whose sou-
aigntie in thempyre shall not perticularly be mooste
pleasaunte vnto you that preletly beholde hym, but
also vnto them that defende the bankes of Rivers, and
the boundes of the Romayne Emprye, as thole that
retaine in memory the notable actes by him atchiued.
We shall not at thys presente, wynne the Barba-
rouse people vnto vs by gystes, but beyng myndfull
of thole thynges they suffered whyles thys man was
Capytayne, they wyll be rather subdued wþt feare.
Whē Letus hadde spoken these wordes, the people
coulde

The seconde boke

Fo. xvii.

could no longer wþthholde them selues. But (whyles
the menne of armes stode styll in theyz dompes) they
pronounced Pertinar Emperour, and callynge hym Perty-
theyz parent, they prayled hym with moost ioyful ac-
clamacyons. The same dyd the Souldiors also, al-
though not with like alacritie. But the nomber of the
people myred amonges them (beyng boyde of armure
and celebratyng the feastfull day) easlye compelled the
to shoute, and call Pertinar Augustus. Furthwþt
(they being sworne in allegaunce vnto hym, and the
sacrifice ended) all the people and men of armes crow-
ned wþt Lawrell, folowed hym. After he was con-
veyed in the nyghte (as we before sayde) into the Im-
peryll Palayce by the Souldiors and the people,
he was troubled wþt manye cares. And although he
seimed too be of a constante and stoute mynde, yet dyd
thynges prelente put hym in feare, nat verye muche so
lyceted for hys owne life, (for he had at other tymes
contempned greater perlyles) but throughe the recor-
ding in hys mynde the sodaine mutacion of tiranny,
and ponderyng the noblytie of manye Senatours,
who he thought woulde not permitt after an Empe-
roure of moost noble byrthe thempyre to come vnto a
man of pruyate and base stocke. For al be it hys tem-
perate and frugall lyfe were well spoken of, and that
he had gotten in warrelyke assayres great renowne,
yet was he of symple lygnage. Wherfore after the
dave appeared he wente too the Senate house, nat
suffryng the syre or anye other tokenes of dygnitye,
too be borne before him, vntyll the determinacion
of the Senate were hearde. Whoo as soone as
they saw him received him al by one accord wþt ioyfull
welcommynge, saluting hym as Augustus and Em-
perour. But he refusyng the name of Emperoure as
a thyng odious, excused his age and desyred pardon,
saying there were many of the Senatours more wþt
thy thempyre then he. And wþt that wōrde he tooke
Glabrio by the hande, commaundynge hym to syt in
Thempyall Throne. For this Glabrio was the no-
blest of the Senatours, accompyng the lyne of hys bilitie of
genealogie Glabrio,
F. iii.

The historie of Herodian

ther then an Emperour. For he commaunded the me
of armes, that thei shold herte or oppresse none of the
people, neyther do injury to any wane farsing man, & fu
nally he reduced all thinges to honeste behauoir and

The ma- modestie. Wher he entered or sate in iudgement, he sh
ners and wed a curteyle countenaunce, and soz that he chiefly
behuoir represented Marcus, he gaue a greate delectacion b
of Pertinax to the Elders, and the relydue of the people, he easelye
drew to lone hym, beynge delinered from cruell tiran
nye, and brought into a quiet lyse. The repozte hereof
beynge once farre of diuulged, prouoked all naciōs and
armes, either subiecte or confederate to the Romaine
people, to gyue deuine honors unto hym. Pea yf anye
of the Barbarouse people had forsaken the Romayne
subiectio[n], or styrred any sedicion (throughe feare of
his prowelte, whyche they did remember he shewed in
the former warres, and throughe confydence of hys
iustyce, when thei knew that he willingly offendid no
man, but gaue prayses unto every man worthye hys
meryses, and that he was voyde of vvolence and cruel
tēe of theyr free willes they realded them selues unto
hym. There came besydes from all partes Ambassa
dors, to gratysye the people of ROME, that they were
gouerned by the authoritye of Pertinax. But the
thing that was most acceptable unto the greatest part
of all men, bothe openly and priuately was that it hap
pened unto the Romaynes people to haue a me
and gentle Emperour. Wherat the men of armes in
the Cyte appoynted unto the Emperours Gardes, gre
tely grudged. For being reduced from excozions, un
to a modeste behauoir of lyfe, and reckenyng for theyr
owne shame, that meke and ryngle gouernance, as by
the whiche they perceaued theyr inordinate lycence to
be taken away, they determyned no leger to sustayne
suche a gouernor. Wherfore in the beginnyng they
bare themselfes more stubborne and lesse obedient to
his commaundement. Finally when he had regnyed
scarsely two full monethes, (haing then shewed per
fecte profe of his goodnes) and all men beynge erected
into a singuler hope) sodeynly a pernicious happe en
uyenge

The seconde booke.

Fol. xx.

uyenge it, bitterly destroyed all thinges. So that hys
notable begynnnges and enterprydes (whiche were
lyke greatly to profyte all men) perlyshed in the myd
des of their course. For syke of all he adiuged all
lande that was vntilled and vnooccupied, eyther in I
talye or any other place, and what soever was vacant
in the tyme of Kynges, unto the tyllers and laboers
therof, unto whome also he gaue tenne yeres fredo me
from Taxes, and perpetuall lybertye. Neyther would
he suffer his owne name, to be writte in Chempours
possessions, savyng they were not Chempours, but
common unto the Romaynes. He remyted also all
trybutes, the whiche Tyrantus had intented to get
money in the Kynges of Kyngers, in the haunes of Ci
ties, and by comune wayes and by patches, and resto
red them to their aunciente lyberties. It seemed also
that he wold do many other lyke thynges. For he
had dryuen oute of the Citye all false accusers, & com
maunded them to be punished wheresoever thei wer
founde, forseyng that no man shold be troubled throughe
wronge acculacion. And therfore the Senate and all o
ther trusted to lyue in greate tranquillytie and blesyd
estate of lyfe. For he shewed hym selfe so equall unto e
very man, that he never brought hys Sonne beynge a
striplyng in yeres, into the Emperours palayce, but
kept him in a priuate house. So that he wone to schole
after his accustomed usage, nothinge vnyke pryuuate
children, and was instructed in all thinges, as one of
a meane sorte. Neyther dyd he bragge or shew forworts
any tyrrannouse or Imperiall pompe, durynge the
tyme that Pertinax lyued. At this modestie of maners
and lyfe onely the Pretoriane Soldyors reyned, & thinke
grudginge at the presente condicione of thinges affec
tencie of
ted their olde sensualitye and lyicense, to behaue them the men
selues violently and to rysle all thynges. And amonge at armes
their belly bārettes, thei consulted to destroye Pertinax
as one comborouse unto them, and to sette in hys Empe
place to rule the Romayne affayres, some other that
were wylde and wantone, and woulde gyue them be
rye moche lybertye.

G. y.

Wherfore

The Historie of Herodian.

generalie unto Aeneas the sonne of Venus and Anchises, and now the second time Cōsull. Who answered Pertynar thus. Truly I, whome of all me your selfe iudge moste worthye, do giue you place in hempyre, and with me al the Senate committeth unto you thole soueraigne auctorite. Than Pertinar beyng almoste constrainned by the earnest prayer of euerie Senatour, and halfe as yet in doubt, ascended the imperiall seate, and spake unto them as foloweth.

The oration of Pertynar.
This your consentte and venyngs accorde of bestowinge vpon me suche ample benefites, amonges to create a company of noble men, seing it is boide from all suspicion of flatterye, and shewyth manyfesto argmente of beneuolence and truthe, woulde encourage some manne to take vpon him the thinges proffered. Trusting that he shoulde with ease gouerne, whyle he myghte perceyue suche gentlenes in you. But in contrarie wise, these weightye charges, as they amase me with perception of this honour, euen so dos they trouble me with great thought and care. For firste of all in receyving of great benefites, it is harde to rendre the lyke. For in the mutual doing of good turnes, if he that oweþ lycle, restore verye mucche, the facility of recþencyng is not so muche regarded, as the apparaunce of a gratsfull minde is in hi cōmended. But whan any man doþe first bestowe some greate gyfte vpon an other, if he then little deserue it, he semeth not so mucche to wante wherwith he shoulde make recompenſe, as him selfe to be boide of wytte and moste ungratefull. I perceyue therfore in my mynde howe un-easye thys prooſe is unto me, leaſt that by chaunce, I shewe my ſelfe unworþy the honour I haue received of you. For the type of dignitie conſylleth not in the percyall ſeate: but in workes which ſhoulde not abafe þame. And euen as mucche as we hate thynges paſſed, ſo mucche do we hope well of thinges that are to come. And as the memorie of iuryes is fyred in mynde, (for that whyche hurteth is never forgotten) ſo do be nefytes ſyde away through the abuſyng of them. For truly libertye deſyreteth not a man ſo mucche as þou dage

The fiftie booke.

Fol. xix.

dage offendethe. Heyther doþe any ma suppose that he ought to render thankes for vþyng his proper ſubſtaunce after hys owne mynde: (for of ryghte he chaſe length that permifſion unto hym ſelue) but he that is dyspoſed of his goodes, wyl never forget the iuriue done unto him. No man reckeneth that to be his owne lucre which he getteth to the commune profytte. For those thynges that be in commune are lytle regarded of every manne particularly. But yf that whyche is proper unto a p̄niate manne, do chaunce worſe then he lokeþe for, then thynketh he hymſelue not to bee well dealte wythall. Belydes this, they whyche haue accuſomed the enormities and unmeaſurable prodigalitie of Tirauntes, (þyf a manne entendeth wante of money to lyue thryfelye, and in meaſurable meane) doo not ſo ſoone attribute it unto a moderate dyſpence, as thei do reproue him furþiwhiſh of ſylyng couetyle. Heyther do they esteame any man able to gyue large gyftes, that doþe abſtayne from vþolence and exortion. But he which diſpēdeth his ſubſtaunce well, and accordyng to hys degree, doþe not onely not take away from any man, but also teacheth others to be frugall, and ſpare that them ſelues gette. Therefor (ryght honoþable fathers) pondeſing these thynges in your mindes) endeayour your ſelues together with me, and accompte the aduincilacion of this Empire to be commune unto vs. For, ſeyng you haue liue in a weale publicke of good men, and not vnder Tyranny, your ſelues ought to conceaue good hope of thynges, and to promife the ſame unto others. When Pertinar had ſpoken thiese thinges (hauyng added unto the Senate a good courage) he was receaued wyth ioyfull ſhoutes and verye honorably enterayned. And haſing vþyng the Temples of Jupiter and the other Goddes, when the ſacrifysce (accordyng to the aunciente vſage) was ended, he returned into The imperiale Palace. After it was ſpredd abrode what he had eyther in the Senate house ſpoken, or unto the people wrytten, all men reioyced: truſſinge that they ſhoulde haue him a gentle and gracieouſe þyng, rather a fa-

O. i. ther

The historie of Herodian

ther then an Emperour. For he commaunded the me-
of armes, that thei shold herte or oppresse none of the
people, neyther do iniury to any wavye saring man, & fy-
nally he reduced all thinges to honeste behauoir and

The ma- modestie. Wher he entered or sate in iudgement, he shew-
ers and wed a curteyle countenaunce, and for that he chiesly
behauoir represented Marcus, he gaue a greate delectacion vnto
of Pertinax to the Elders, and the reslyue of the people, he easelye
dewe to loue hym, beyng deliuered from cruell tiran-
nye, and brought into a quiet lyfe. The repozte hereof
beyng once farre of diuulged, prouoked all nacids and
armes, either subiecte or confederate to the Romayne
people, to gyue deuynie honoures vnto hym. Pea ys anye
of the Barbarouse people had forsaken the Romayne
subiectiōn, or syrrēd any sedicion (throughe feare of
his prowesse, whyche they did remember he shewed in
the former warres, and throughe confydence of hys
iustyce, when thei knew that he willingly offendid no
man; but gaue prayses vnto every man worthye hys
merites, and that he was vnyde of vpolence and cruel-
tē of theyr free willes they realded them selues vnto
hym. There came besydes from all partes Ambassa-
dores, to gratysye the people of Rome, that they were
gouerned by the authoritye of Pertinax. But the
thing that was most acceptable vnto the greatest part
of all men, bothe openly and priuately was that it hap-
pened vnto the Romaynes people to haue a me-
ste and gentle Emperour. Wherat the men of armes in
the Cyte appoynted vnto hys Emperours Gardē, gre-
tely grudged. For being reduced from excozions, vnto
a modeste behauoir of lyfe, and reckenyng for theyr
owne shame, that meke and ryngle gouernauice, as by
the whiche they perceaued theyr inordinate lycence to
be taken away, they determyned no leger to sustayne
suche a gouernour. Wherfore in the begynnyng they
bare themselfes more stubburne and lesse obedient to
his commaundement. Finally when he had regnyed
scarsely two full monethes, (hauing then shewed per-
fecte profe of his goodnes) and all men beyng erec-
ted into a singuler hope) sydeynly a pernicious happe en-
upenge

The seconde booke

Fol. xx.

upenge it, vterly destroyed all thinges. So that hys
notable begynninges and enterprydes (whiche were
lyke greatly to profyte all men) periyded in the my-
des of their course. For sydeynly of all he adiudged all
lande that was vntolled and vnooccupied, eyther in I-
talye or any other place, and what soeuer was vacant
in the tyme of Kynges, vnto the tyllers and labozeris
therof, vnto whom also he gaue tenne yeres fredome
from Taxes, and perpetuall lybertye. Neyther would
he suffre his owne name, to be writte in Chempours
possessions, sayenge they were not Chempours, but
common vnto the Romaynes. He remyssed also all
trybutes, the whiche Tyrantus had intented to get
money in the Ryuages of Ryuers, in the hanēs of Ci-
ties, and by commen wayes and by patches, and resto-
red them to their aunciente lyberties. It seemed also
that he wold do many other lyke thynges. So he
had dryuen oute of the Cyte all false accusers, & com-
maunded them to be punished wheresoever thei wer-
founde, forseyng that no man shold be troubled through
wronge accusacion. And therfore the senate and all o-
ther trusted to lyue in greate tranquillytie and blesyd
estate of lyfe. For he shewed hym selfe to equall vnto e-
very man, that he never brought hys Sonne beyng a
strylyng in yeres, into the Emperours palapce, but
kept him in a priuate house. So that he went to schole
after his accustomed usage, nothinge vnyke pryuate
children, and was instructed in all thinges, as one of
a meane sorte. Neyther dyd he bragge or shew for the
any tyrranouse or Impetvall pompe, but yage the
tyme that Pertinax lyued. At this modestie of maners
and lyfe onely the Praetoriane Soldiorys reyned, & Chas-
grudginge at the p̄esente condicōn of thinges affec-
ted their olde sensualitye and lyicense, to behauie them
selues violently and to rysle all thynges. And amonge at armes
their belly bārettes, thei consulted to dessore Pertinax of the
place to rule the Romayne assayres, some other that roys gardē
were wylde and wantone, and woulde gyue them bes-
rye moche lybertye.

G. y.

Wherfore

The historie of Herodian

Wherfore esodeynlie (whiles every man was in quiet) they being madde ran in great companies with much hast at noonetide unto the emperours Palayce, wryth theyr speares extened and theyr swordes naked. And at their thither comming, the Chamberers of the Palayce (being astonied with this sodayne matter vnoocked for, and being fewe against manye, and naked at gaulse harnessed men) were not able to resisse them. And therfore every man besy hys facion, and rannes dyuerse lyf ther and thither. But a fewe of the emperours chiefest frendes, hauinge he wed unto Perbynar the flockyng togidher of the Souldiours perswaded him to make shypste for him selfe by sleinge, and to call vpon the people for ayde. But he (altho he they counsellest him profitably) at that presente, thinkyng it a shamefull thyng, vñwor thyne the emperiall Maiestie, and hys sonn erlyfe, to commite his safarie vnto flighte and corners, determined to preuent the peryll and go furthe amonges them, trusyng that he should perswade them what he woulde, and mitigate theyr furpons braynes. He wente out of his chamber & metynge the raged Souldiours, enquyred what was the caule of this sodayne sturre, willyng them to cease from so filthy a tumult. And being not ones abashed wryth the peryll, but retaining a graue countenaunce conuenient to the emperiall Maiestie, nor shewing any thing appertaining vnto a supplaunt, he spake these wordes vnto them. Truelye if ye lea me (the Souldiours) neyther do ye artebus anye notable enterpryse, or do me any griefe at all, being of this age & renown. Perbynar vñwo thyne lyfe. But you that are appointed to the charge & custome of youre Prynce, and to remeue perylles from his person, to begin murder your selues, and to defile your handes with bloude, not onely Cixyle, but also of your Emperoure, take heede, I saye, least it be plesantly abominable, and in time to come daungerous vnto your selues. For I haue committed no iniuri or offfense agaynst you. If you be sorowfull for the deathe of Commodus, truely it was not I that gaunge for him to dye

The seconde booke.

Fo. xxii.

die, beynge borne a manne. But if you thynke he was slaine by treason, be relyt it was not my default, beynge one as your selues knowe wryde from all suspiyon. For the thinges that were then committed, your selues knewe syxt, so that if any suspitione rose, it hapened in others. As for the reste, altho he be dead, yet wyl I not suffre you to want any thyng that you wil modestly, and mite for your estate wrythoute byolence and extorcyon desyre. By these his wordes some of them were euuen then pacified and began to depart, reuerencyng the holynes and age of the prince: but he was of the other wryth an assaultie slayne. Who (after they had committid this wrycked dede) knowyng that the people woulde be dolefull for it, wente streyghte vnto the Campe, and kept them selues within the fortresse, hauing appointed men of armes in y towres to kepe the people from the walles. This end had Perbynar, that was for his lyfe and maners (as we haue before sayde) worthye eternall prayse. When the rumour of this murde was spred amonges the people, all places were fylled with tumultes and lamentacions. The people wandered hither and thither, lyke madde men vncertayne what they shoulde doo. They soughte for the Aucthors of the myschiese, whome they could neither fynd, nor be auenged on. But especiallye the Senate were meruaylous dolefull, repugning their own calamite for y they wated so good a fathir, and soo meeke a Prynce, and feareyd also tyranny, whiche they knewe to be agreeable vnto the menne of armes. But when a daye or twoo were passed, all the comynynalite throughe euery mans peculiuer feare remayned in reste. Those that bare anye aucthorsye, devarted vnto suche Manours as they possessed furthest from the Cypre, leasse that in chosynge a newe Gouvernour some greuouse offens should be layd to their charge. And the Souldiours (knowyng the people to be in quyer, and no manne remaynyng that woulde reuenge the Prynces deathe) kepte them selues wrythin theyr fortresse. And hauyng set vpon the wall one wryth a verye loude voice

G. iii. they

Th Historie of Herodian

they proclaymed the Empyre to be sole, sayinge they woulde deluyer it vnto hym that woulde gyue moste money for it, and woulde bryng hym safelyle into the Emperyall Palayce. That Proclamacyon hearde, never moued any man of the Senate that was grante or in auctorizyng neyther anye manne of the noblye, ey, or synallye of thole that were ryche, beyng fewe in number, thoughe the tyzanne of Commodus.

Neyther durste anye of them approche vnto the wall to purchase so money so detestable a domynyon. But it was declared vnto one Julianus (who had bene Consull, and was supposed also to haue great abou-
bicyon of daunce of money) at nyghte whan he sat at Supper banquetyng for he was reckened a man of euyll con-
uersacion. Wherupon his wyfe, hys daughter, and a compayne of Parasytes, perwaded him that leauing hys table he shoulde make hast and knowe what were done. And after in hys goyng they exhorted hym to occupie the boide Empyre, assympyng that he might conuynce all others by gyltes, he was perdyng so pas-
singe ryche. Wherfore when he approched nyghe the walles, he cried with a lowde booice that he woulde giue them what they demaunded, saying he had great abundance of ryches and Chesses full of goulde and siluer. And at the same time one Sulpicianus who hadde also bene Consull, and governoure of the Cy-
pere, and was fater in lawe to Pertynar, cheapened the Empyre: but the menne of armes suspected in hym his assympye wyth Pertynar, chynkyng some deceyte to be in it, that he myght thereby avenge the death of Pertynar. Wherfore, hauyng lete downe ladders, they toke Julianus vp vnto the walles, not beyng so bolde as to open the gates vntyll they were accorded of paymemente of the money. And he beyng entered the fortresse, syrste of all promyed that he woulde restore the honoures and Images of Com-
modus whyche the Senate hadde taken downe, and that he woulde graunte vnts them the same lycence they hadde vnder Commodus, and further, that he woulde gyue vnto euerye Souldyours more money,

Sulpici-
anus.

The seconde booke.

Fo. xxii.

then they eyther durste desyre or hoped to receyue, neyther shoulde there be anye delave in the paymemente. For (as he) it is safely kepte in my house. With which promysses the menne of armes beyng entyed, and trayned wyth great hope, pronounced Julianus they
Princ, and gaue hym the surname of Commodus. Then dysplayinge they baners (vpon the which they had painted the pycutures of Julianus) they concludes to bryng hym furthe. Wherfore when Sacryfycie (after the vslage) was ended, he wente furthe enuyroned wyth a greater Garde then other Emperours were accustomed: For hauyng boughte thempyre by bvoieunce agaynste the peoples wyll, and by sylthre shane, w good cause, he feared thinsurrecyon of the Commynalites. But the Souldyours beyng armed and compasled on euerie syde like a cyrcle, that is nede requyred they myghte syghte, take into the myddes of them they Emproure, and lyftynge they shylde and Targettes ouer they beades to be thereby the more safet yf any stones were thowen from the hou-
ses, they broughte hi into theperours Palayce. None of the peopl durste resyste them, neyther dyd they folowe the Emperoure as they accustomed with ioyful shoures, but euerys manne cursed hym byterly, re-
proyng hym for that he hadde purchased thempyre wyth money. Then fyrt of all were the dysposicions of the Souldyours corrupted, then increased the syl-
thy and insatiable couetyse of money, with contempt of thempyall Maiestye. For when there was no man remaynyng that woulde reuenge the cruell deathe of the late Princ, neyther anye that woulde wytch-
stande that sylthre facte of sale and vnhoneste mar-
chandysse, the same gaue occasion vnto the menne of armes to ware thereafter more vnererente and re-
bellyng, in so muche that auaryce and contempte of the Princ daylye encreased euuen vnto deathe. For Julianus hauyng obtainned thempyre, gaue hym selfe to ryotte, neglectynge the weake publike, and leadyng a naughtye voluptuous lyfe, yea he desreyed the trusse of the Souldyours beynge vnable to

G. iii. perfourme

Julya-
nus ma-
de Empe-
rour bi p
Pretoria
Souldy-
ours.

Th Historie of Herodian

Performe hys promyses vnto them. For he had nat so
greate substance as he bragged of, and the common
treasure was exhausted by the immoderate dispences
of Commodus. For these causes the men of armes on
the one part detested him. On the other side the people
not ignorant thereof despised hym. Wherefore they
pursued him as he passed by with reproche, upbraiding
hym for hys fylthye and vnsittable pleasures, so that o-
pely in the very Theater vnto the which a great mul-
titude of men resorted he wold rebuke Julianus,
and call Pyger y Protector of the Romayne Empire
and Presidere of the Soueraine principality, prayeng
hym that he woulde wyth all speade come vnto the
and delyuer them from those manyfolde injuries. The
same Pyger had bene Cosill, and then was gouernor
of all Siria, the whiche was the chieffest dignitye at
that tyme. For all Phenices and all the Regyous, un-
to the ryuer of Euphrates were vnder hys dominion.
He was then somwhat stryken in age, and havinge
bene occupied in many weyghty affayres, had obtay-
ned the renowne of modestye and ryghteouesnelle, so
that he seemed to solowe the lyfe of Pertynax. By the
whiche he chieflie wannte the fauour of the people. For
which respecte, thei with oftein clamours called vpon
hym, taunting wyth reproches Julianus beynge pre-
sent, and extolling wyth prayses and toyfull howtes
Pyger that was absente. Whereof when Pyger once
hearde, (trusting that all thinges wold prosper accor-
dynge to hys desyre (sypnge that Julianus was of the
men of Armes neglected, as one that had violated hys
truthe and promyse, and of the people contempned as
a man not worthy, for that he had purchased hys prin-
cipalystie) he beganne to hope for the obtayning of the
Emprise. And syrle he dysmyssed home (sone on time
sone an other) diuerse of the Captyernes, Tribunes,
and other me of Armes, who likewise had knowledge
of all newes that were brought vnto him from ROME.
This dyd he to the intent the rumors myghte be spreade
verye broade in the Caste. For so he supposed to ioyne
manye vnto him, yf he seemed nat to enterprise the oc-
cupyeng

Pyger
called to
theire.

Syria.
Pheni-
ces.
Euphra-
tes.

The seconde boke

To. xxii.

cupyeng of the Emprise by discorde, but to succor them
that desyred ayde. Wherefore all the people there abou-
tes came incontinently towardes hym euerie man
by hym selfe, beschyng hym to take the charge of the
common wealthe furthwyth vpon hym. For the na-
cid of y Sirians is naturally vnstable and prone vnto
chaunge of thinges: And thei loued Pyger exceeding-
ly, for that he behaued hymselfe verye gently amon-
ges them, delytyng them wyth plesaunte playes and
iupteoule solempnites. The Sirians are also of their
owne nature very desyrouse of suche shewes. Amon-
ges whome the Antiochians (enhabyting a great and
famous Cyte) do throughoute the hole pere eyther in
the Citiie selfe or elles in the Suburbes, celebrate sea-
fes and playes. Wherefore in setting furthe shewes
and solempnites vnto them, he so wannte their hartes
that they feruently loued hym. The whiche when Py-
ger perfectly perceaued, hauing a certayne daye com-
maunded the men of armes to be presente, and all the
people commynge togithers, in a hyghe place for that
purpose erected, he laid vnto them as ensueth.

The o-
posiciō hath bene, & how lōge I haue cōsulted or I wēt Pyger.
aboute any weyghty matter, neyther woulde I haue
come furthe to speke vnto you at this tyme yf I hadde
bene ledde eyther by myne owne pruuate counsell or
by assured hope, or elles pitch affection surmountinge
truste. But the Romaynes call me and with interces-
sions weary me to stretche my helpyng hāde vnto the,
and that I shoulde not per myt so excellente and glo-
rouse an Emprise leste by our elders to be nowe shame-
fully destroyed. And as it is a presumpcione and rathe
thinge to medell in so weightie affayres without occa-
sion, so yf a man deny succour vnto the that wante and
desyre it, then is he then in the lasche of Cowardyse,
and Treasone. Wherefore for this purpose am I come
furthe vnto you that I myghte knowe yowre aduyse
what ye ludge besste to be done, and that I myghte
ye you as Counsellors in all thys busynesse. If
it do prosperoulye come to passe, the commodityse

Y. l. therof

Thistorie of Herodiam

therof shall be comune vnto you and mee. It is no
small riches that solciste vs, but it is the very Romain
people, vnto whom the Goddes haue giuen the domi-
nion of al thinges, and the Romaine Empyre selfe, as
yet wauering, and to no man certainly establisched.
The counsayle whiche we enter is assured, yf we con-
sider the mindes of the luters, no manne being able
to resyste vs. For they that come from thence, reporte
that the men of armes the selues of whome he bought
thempire, are not very faithful vnto him, for y he hath
not perfourmed his promyse. Let me heare now your
opinions herein. Whiles he spakethese wordes, furth
with thole armys and all the common people saluted

Pyger sal-
uted
Empe-
rour.

Europe.
Cuphra-
tes & Ei-
grys.

him as Emperour and Augustus. And when he was
clothed wylch Purple and adorned wylch Imperiall
vesture, beynge there sodaynlye as of purpose founde,
wylch the syze borne before hym, they conuayed hym
syssse vnto the Temples of Antyoche, and then to
hys owne house. The whyche, as it were not nowe
pryuate, they decked wylch Imperiall signes and or-
namentes. With thole thinges Pyger beynge ioyfull
and perceyuing the mynde of the Romaynes, and be-
neuolence of al other me towardestes him, thought now
al his purpose to be in perfecte pylght. Wher y bruite
of this was blowen abrode, incontinently al nacyons
that inhabited ouer against Europe, hasted every man
for him selfe, to proffer him theyz assystance. And Am-
bassadours also from al partes came to Antioche vnto
hym, as vnto their lawfull prynce. The kinges also
and the rulers dwelling beyond Cuprates & Tygris,
sente to gratifye hym, promising theyz ayde in al hys
enterpryses. The whyche Ambassadours rewarded
wylch greate gyftes and thankes he dysmyssed, saying
vnto them, he neded not as at that present anye ayde.
For his Empyre was wel strengthened, he whiche he
wolde wylt bloudshed wel gouerne. His mynd being
thus exalted to great hope, he began to be more negly-
gent in executing y he shold, deliting hym selfe and y
people of Antioche wylch pleasures & setting furth of sh-
owes and playes, neither thought he once of going v-

The seconde boka.

Fe. xxiii

to Rome, y whiche should first haue bene done, neither
certified he the Illyrian armes (who shoulde chedys
haue bene won vnto hys) of these affaires: for he trusted
that when they once knew the matter, they would to-
gether with the Romaines and nacions of the Orien-
tall condescende vnto him. Whiles he thus little regarded
his affaires, the same thereof was spred amounges the
Pannoniens, the Illyriens, & al the other armes abi-
ding on the coastes of Danuby & Rhen, for the defece
of the Romaine Empyre againste the Barbariens. Danuby
Then was gouernour of y Pannoniens (for they wer
al ruled by one mans authorite) one named Seuerus,
of the nacion of Africque, a man behement & diligent
In furthering his affaires, accustomed to leade a hard
& harpe life prompt in y inuentio, and spedy in the ex-
ecution of thinges. The whiche seing y Romaine Em-
pire to hang vnseddall, & as it were opened to pillage,
despised the one Emperour as a luggyshe cowarde, &
the other as of no acount. Certaine dreames & Dra-
cles besides augmented his hope, & other diuinacions
of thinges to come, the whiche whe they came to effect
obtained report of veritie: of y whiche hym selfe wrote
most part in booke of his own life, & published theym
openlye painted in Tables. But it behoueth me not to
ouer passe wout writing his last dreame, which being
of greatest weight, brought most hope vnto him. For
wher it was first told hym y Pertinax was made Em-
perour, Seuerus hauninge ended sacrifice, and beynge
sworne in obedience to the Prince, assone as he came
home was take with a dead slepe: In y whiche he drea-
med that he sawe a great and gorgyouse horse decked
wylch the Emperours sadell, carvylge Pertinax hym
selfe through the Citie, by the strete called Sacra via.
But when he came vnto the entrye of the market place
(vnto the whiche the people whyleas they were to liber-
tie accustomed to resorte in greate altembyes) he comed
vnto him that y the horse querchrew Pertinax vnto y
ground, & offering his backe vnto Seuerus standing
nygh, caried hym throughte the midde of the market
place, where he was reverenceed of all the people.

The
dreams
of Seu-
rus.

Thistorie of Herodian

There remayneth in the same place vnto thys day the Image of the same dreame beyng verye greate & made of brasle. After thys sozre Seuerus beyng excolled in mynde, and thynkyng him selfe to be sollicited vnto theimpre by diuine prouydence, determinyd to assay the myndes of the Souldiours. Wherfore, adioyning

Tribun. syste vnto him the Capytaynes, Tribunes, and the chiefeſt of the menne at armes, in talke with them of the Romayne empre, sayde it was nygh destroied, no man remaynyng by whome it myghte be valyauntly and prudently gouerned. Inueighyng also agaynſt the Pretorian Cohortes, who had detiled their othe of Pictorij allegaunce wylth their Emperours bloude, he sayde the deathe of Pertynar oughte to be reuenged, beyng nothynge ignoraunte that the memorie of Pertinax was fyred yet in the myndes of the Illyrian armes.

For they had by hys guidinge vnder the Emperoure Marcus obtayned many byctozyes againſt the Germanynes. And beyng lieuetenant of Illiria he shewed many examples of vertue and prowelſe in warre, and exhibited to hys companions muche beneuolence and modestie with a meeke and moderate gouernauſce. Wherfore worſhipping the memoſy of y prince they greuously grudged that ſo greate crueltye ſhouide be done vnto him. Seuerus therfore takyng vnto hi this occation, led them easely whither he wold, faining y he affected not theimpre, but soughte to reuenge the bloud of Pertynar. And as the me of y Regyon are of great and tall bodies prompte and redy to warre and murder, ſo are they of dul and groſſe capacitie: where by they do not easely perceyue what a man craftely ſpeketh or warketh. Therfore whē Seueruſ had faith fully promiſed them to persecute the murdeſ of Pertynar, he ſo wan al they ſauours, that he was named Emperour, and receiued the whole auctoritie of the. And after he vnderſtoode the mindes of the Pannoniens, immediately he allured vnto him w giſtes the rulers of all the nighe nations y were ſubiecte vnto the Romayne Empre. For Seuerus was y rediſt of all men to faine frendſypp, to that he paſſed not to be periured

The ſeconde boke.

Fol:xxv.

periured yſ neade requyred, alwayes hauyng one thynge in his mouthe, and an other in hys ſtomacke. Therfore after he had gotten credite and fauoure by letters with all the Illyrians and Rulers of the Provinces, hauyng gathered togyther Souldiours from every parte, and taken vpon him the ſurname of Pertynar, the whiche he ſuppoſed woulde be moſt accepable, not onelye vnto the Illyrians, but also vnto all the Romaine people, and hauyng caſled them all togiher into the fielde, he ſpake vnto them as enſueth. You do euidently ſhew (Souldiours) of what loyaltie The oſſe & Religion you are towardeſ the Goddes bi whom ye cion of are ſworne and what reuerence ye here vnto your Emperour, whē you do ſo muſe deteſt the men of armes of y Citie (being miſtiers rather of pompe and ſuperfluitie, then of vertue & prowelſe) for that they haue comiſſed ſo horrible an offeſce. And certainly I that am now entring into ſo great hope (your ſelues pardie al know how obedient I haue bene vnto Princes) deſire to atcheue and bring to effect y ſhal be acceptable vnto you: neither to ſuffre the Romaine Empire to runne into ruyne, the whiche being gouerned by our elders w great auctoritie, was reuerenced of all men. And after it fel vnto Commodus, althoughe throughe his youth it began manye times to decay, yet was al the fault therof shadowed, partly w the prynces nobilitie & partly w the memorie of his good father. Neither did his vices deserue rather hate then compaſſion, for we imputed not y thinges y were done, ſo muſe vnto hi, as vnto y flattering Paralites & other Counſellers & miſtiers of vile voluptuousenes, vntill the pire came vnto y godly olde man, the memorie of whol vertue & goodnes reſteſt yet in your myndes, whō noſtwithſtādinge it was ſo farre from their entent to ſustaine, y w abhominable murver they deſtroyed him. After hi hath a man (whō I know not) purcaſed the domynton of Sea and lande. And for that acte is hated of the people. Neiher are the men of armes true vnto hym, because he haſt deſeyned them. And yſ they woulde defende hym, yet are they not in number oſ vali-

¶.liij.

The Historie of Herodian.

valyante prowelte to be compared unto you. Besydes that you haue bene exercysed in warlike assayres. For you are accustomed to fight with the barbarous nations, to suffer al labour, to despyshe heate and colde, to passe ryuerse frozen ouer with yle, to dynke water dygged and not springinge oute of the pearche, and to watche in hunting of wyld beastes: synallye you are furnyshed with all prouispons appertayninge unto valiautnes, so that it is easye for no man to withstande your strengthe. For the man of armes is approued by labour, and not by banqueting and ryotte: with þ whi che thei are so trayed, that thei can not susayne your vycce, muche lesse your syghte. But yf the assayres of Siria seame terryble unto any man, let the same ponder howe weake they are and wþt howe symply hope thei be ruled, that they dare not once come forth or consuite of goynge unto the Cyte, but taking those habitations in good warthe, accompte the pleasures euerdave gotten to be the lucre of that vnconstant auctorite. As for the nacion of Sirians is chiesly addicted unto iestes and playes. And thei which inhabite Antioch are thoughte principallye to sauour Asiger. For the other nacions and Cytes seynge no man wþtynge the Empyre, or that shold modestly and valyanteir governe the comon wealthe, at the lasse saigned them selues to obey hym. But yf they ones knewe that an Emperour were created by the Illyrian armes, and hearde therwithall oure name, the whyche is not knowne unto them (for my selfe haue heretofore had dominion ouer them) they wþll not alledge cowardise or flouthe unto vs. Neþher will they abide your innassions or proue your valiaute prowelte especially, seyng they are not comparable unto you, eyther in talnes of person, warlycke exercises, or syghting hðde to hðde. Therfore lette vs with all speade possesse the Cyte of Rom, the verye seate of thempyre, and then shall we easly bryng to passe the residewe, assyng our selves in the oracles of the Goddess, & in the strength of your weapons & bodys. When Seuerus had spok these wordes unto them they receaued hym wþt ioyfull shoutes

The seconde boke.

Fo. xxvi.

shoutes and callynge hym Augustus and Pertinax Seuerns promyld hym their benevolent hertes and myndes. And he thinking it not good to prolonge the time, so Augustus maunded them with all celeritee to be armed, proclai- and Per med his boyage towardes the Cite, gaue unto euerye tinar. manne bytayle, and other sufficiene necessaries for their iorney, and remoued with all speade, restinge in no place, nor ones suffring the Souldiours to staye, bryll throughhe theyz greate labour they coulde scarsely fetche breathe. And hym selfe trauylinge wþt the somesete of them, and lodgyng in a simple tente, dyde eate and dyncke of the same the souldiours dyd, neuer shewinge anye pompe, or imperyal wantonnesse whereby euerye daye he wared more acceptable then other. For seyng he was not onely partaker, but also authoure and heade of all theyz trauyyle he became so honourable unto them all, that they seamed mooste gladde to do anye thynge he woulde commande. After he hadde passed Pannonye, and was come unto the mountaines of Italy, preventing so the fame of his approche that he was in open sight, before hys commynge was harde of, a meruaylous dreade inuaded the Italien Cytes, when they sawe so greate an armye. For the inhabitautes of Italye bvinge of a longe space wþtynge from warre, dyd nowe till theyz lande and lynes in peace. For as longe as the Cytie was free, and that the Capitaynes for the warres were elected by the Senate, the Italien nacions were euer in harmonie. And hanynge subdued the Grecians and Barbarous, gate unto them selues the dominion of Lande and Sea. Neþher was there anye clymate, or parte of the wþrld unto the whyche the Romaynes stretched not theyz force. But after that Augustus hadde obtained the Empyre, he released the Italiens from laboure, and toke from them theyz weapons, and retayned wþt hym for appoynted wages onely certayne mercenary Souldiours to defende the Romayne Empyre. Then compassed he the boundes of hys Empyre wþt the greatnesse of Ryuerse and dyches, wþt hys

þ. llii. þyngs

The Historie of Herodian.

hyghe and sharpe hylles, and wytch deserte places. Wherfore when they harde that Seuerus was nigh wytch so greate an armye, beyng (noe withoute caute) wytch that vnaccustomed thyngis astonyed, when they durst neyther resytle hym, or forbyd hym passage, thei mette hym crowned wytch lawrell, and receaued hym into theyz Cytyes, the gates beyngi opened. And he abydyngi no longer in anye place then luffycyd to do sacryfice and speake vnto the people, hepte on hys iorney towardes Rome. When this was declared vnto Julianus he thought hymselfe vitterly vnydone, he hadde so ostentymes harde of the power and multytude of the Ilyrian armye. For he mystred the people of whom he knewe himselfe hated, neyther had he great assiaunce in his garde, because he had deceaued thei. Wherfore hauinge gathered togither a greate sume of money partly of hys owne, and partly of hys fryndes, and what so euer he soude eyther in the temples, or anye other places, he distributed it amonges the Souldiours, that thereby he myghte reconcyle theyz fauour. But they althoughe they hadde receaued many ample gyftes, rendered no thankes, intentiouni their dutie to be nowe paide, and not one beneftise bestowed on them. Furthermore, althoughe the friendes of Julianus perwaded hym to leade furthe an armie, and kepe the straites of the Alpes, (for this Alpes are molte hyghe hylles, wherof the lyke are not in thys Regyon, stretched furthe in the maner of a wall, and compassing all Italy, as thoughe nature so the more felicitie of the countrey hadde added this one heape, that it myght haue a municion vnpreegnable, stretchinge from the Northerne vnts the Southerne sea, yet durst he not ones go furthe of the Cyte: But sente vnto the Souldiours desiring them to armie and exercepte them selues, and to caste a trench before the Cyte. Hym selfe prepared all apparayle for the warre wthin the Cyte selfe, especially he endeouored to breake the Glephantis (whome he had before ordened for Pompe and triumphe) to suffre litters oþer thynging that the Allrian Souldiours and theyz hys

The
Alpes.

The seconde booke.

Fol. xxvii.

ses shold be put in feare wth the sighte and greatness of those belles, whose like thei had never before seane. And all the Cyte was busied wth forging of armure, and makyng of warlycke instrumentes. But whiles the Souldiours of Julianus delayed the tyme in apparelling them selues to battayle, newes wer brought that Seuerus was arived euuen at hands. He had sente many of hys Souldiours priuily at sundry tymeis to Rome, the whiche in the nyght entered the Cyte by divers wayes, hauyng couered theyz harnesse wth the habite of Pagans. And now was the aduersarie wth in the Cyte, whiles Julianus dreamed in a maneruncertayne what to doo. The whiche when the people perceaued, eueri man being striken wth feare, & dreadinge the power of Seuerus they seyned theim selues to take hys parte, despysenge Julianus for that he was a cowarde and fayrer for that he was foytfull: yet dyd they greatly wonder that Seuerus was then so nyghe at hande. Howe Julianus staggeinge and boyde of Counsell, hauinge fyfte called the Senate togithers, sente letters vnto Seuerus to conclude a peace betwene them taking hym as felowe into the Emperye wth him. But althoughe the Senate had ordeyned all thiese thinges, yet perceauing him to tremble throughe despayre of hys safegarde, thei tour ned wholy vnto Seuerus. And two or thre dayes after, when they hard that Seuerus was euuen at hys contemnyng Julianus, they assembled in the Senate house by the commaundement of the Consulles: for thei haue the charge of the Romayne aþayres when therer is any doute of the Emperye. And when thei had therer manye tymeis mette togithers, consulted what was nedfull to be done, whyles Julianus yet remained in the Pallace lamentynge hys fortune, and bumbly desyryng them, that he myght gyue ouer the Emperye, and religne all hys auctorite vnto Seuerus. But when the Senate perceaued Julianus so feareful, hys Garde astonyed, and hym selfe forsaken of all men, they concluded hys deach, and pronounced Seuerus Emperour. Then they sente Ambassadours

31.

vnto

The Historie of Herodian

Unto hym, wherof some were Magistrates, and some had chieff rule in the Senate, the which should give unto hym al the honours appertayning to Augustus; and the charge of slaynge Julianus, was commyted
A Tribu unto one of the Tribunes. The same Tribune murde-
ne slewe red the seable and miserable olde man (which had pur-
chased unto him with money so wretched an ende) be-
yng desolate and abandoned of all persons and ma-
kyng buncumly lamentacions. The which when Se-
verus hearde, purposyng in his minde greater mat-
ters he toke counsell of apprehendynge all the men of
armes which had slayne Pertinax. The which tabzg
to pase, he set letters unto the Tribunes Capytaines
and centurios exhorting them with many promisses,
to perswade the Souldours of the Cite to be obedient
unto hym. And he hym selfe sente commaundement,
that leuyng theyr armure wyrhyn theyr campe, they
shoulde come furthe cladelyke peasyble personnes,
as they accustomed to goo in Tryumphes, and to ce-
lebrat playes. I were alleageaunce unto Severus,
and conceyving in item selfes a singuler hope, shoulde
be ready to folowe their newe Emperour. The Souldours
beleauynge this throughe the perswasyons of
the Tribunes, layed theyr armure aparte, and came
fourthe crowned with Lauroll in gorgeouse garment-
es. Now when thei came unto the army of Severus,
he beyng therof aduertysed commaunded, them to re-
sorte togithers in the fynelde, as though he wold gen-
tely welcomen them all. And when they approched the
Imperial seate, shoating toysally togithers, thei were
all by a wachte worde sodeynly enclosed. For so haddes
Severus appoynted it that when his souldours sawe
them attenyself herkenyng unto thei Prince, they
should enuyzon them all as ys they boore enemys and
wounding, or strikyng no man, wyrh a compasse en-
close them rounde about, onely holding sourbe their
dardes and speares, that the other for feare of woun-
des shold not, beyng naked, and sowe, presume to re-
syste those that were armed, & many. Unto whō (whē
he had thus taken and entangled them as it were a
toyle of weapons) with a highe voice and troubled spē

The seconde booke,

Fo. xxviii.

rite, he spake as foloweth, You see that we haue ouer-
come you as wel, by aduys, and pollicy, as by strenght. The wo-
number. Ye are taken mosse easly, & holde without des of des-
great difficuttie, what shalbe done of you that haue in ver' vnde-
rmy, powere: ye shalde now here preesely as prayes lab. the Pre-
fecte to our Emperye. If for your mischeuous facte ye forke & loke
sake codigne punyshmet, ye shall never finde it. You diours,
haue slayn a godly olde ma and worthy Emperour
whō your selfes shold haue preserued & defended. You
haue filthely & shamefully, as it were the possession of
a private person, & as filthy būters, solde y Romaine
Empereshineng w perpetuall glorie, the which our el-
ders ruled w vertue & renowme. And that more is, as
mosse timorous & cowardly dastardes, you durst not
ones desede & succor him, whō after that sort, your sel-
ves erected unto the type of dignitie. For thise your
heinous offeces & horrible wickednes, a thousande to-
metes of death are due unto you, ys a ma wylde study
for a mete rewarde unto your deserfes. Wherefore
what you are worthy to suffre your selfes apparauntly
perceane. Neuerthelesse, I wil abstaine fro weding of
bloode, not folowig your hādes. But because law, & e-
quite prohibith you to garde a Prince, having vio-
lated your othe, & defiled your hādes w ciuite & Impe-
rial blode, in falseheng your allegiaunce & truch, albeit
of our bouteouse clemecye we pardō you your lyues,
& yet do I charge my Souldours, y thei vngirde you, &
after thei haue dispoiled you fro your armure, thei let
you go naked, your selfes I comānd to depart far hecc
And furder I ordene, Iwre, & denouce, y if any of you
be fōside hereafter wīn a hūdred miles of the Cite, he
shal lose his lyfe. Incōtinently after this sentence pro-
nounced, the Illiria Souldours ran unto the, & after
thei had bereaued fro the their shōrt skeles decked w
golde & siluer, (which thei ware for proude pompe and
bragging brauerie) & taking fro the by violence theyr
purles with their other apparaile & toakes of warriors
thei dismissed them so riteled of al thei had. Thei being
theselvys thus betrāied, & by crasch disceite so apprehe-
ded, toke their fortune pacifli. For what shold thei do,
being naked against armed, and sowe against manye

The Historie of Herodian

They departed therefore bewailyng them selues, and interpreting the release of theyz lyues a greate good turne bestowed vpon them. But yet they lamented that thei came surthe unarmid, and so offred them selues to be shamefullly taken. Powe Seuerus bled an other wyle agaynste them. For (fearynge that they be wyng naked and spoilt, wold in a desperacio retorne vnto their campe, and fall to harnes) he sente the stro-
gesse and moste experie of all hys Souldours by other wayes and pathes: commaundynge theym to enter into the voyde tentes, and sealynge on the armure there leste, to forbidde them thentry when thei retourned. This punyshment therefore had the murderer of Pertinar. Then Seuerus with the rest of hys hosts apparaled with armure wente vnto Rome. The Ro-
maines were at the syrste lyghte affayred, and dreaf-
full, psondryng in theyz myndes hys stoutenes and
fortune. The Senate and all the people crownd with Lawrell receaued hym (as the syrste of all menne and Emperours) bringer to passe of so great and weighty
a matter withoute bloudeshedde or busy trouble. All
qualties belydes were meruaylouse in hym: specially
the shapnes of his wytte, his suffraunce of laboure,
and prompte audacite of good hope in enterprysynge
of weightie assayres. After the people had receaued
him with soyouse acclamacions, and the hole Senate
welcommed hym at the gates of the Cyte, he byseted
the temple of Iupiter, made there his sacrifice and sa-
luted the other Temples, and then entred into the im-
perial palayce. The next day, he came into the Coode:
where he made an oracio with a good countenaunce,
and embazed al menne openly and priuily, sayeng he
came vnto the City to reuenge the death of Pertinar.
And promyssed to erecte the fundacions of the estate of
Emperour. That no man shoulde lose his life, or good-
es, excepte he were by iudgemente condemned: all
pykethankes and false promyters beynge dyspatched a-
way. And that he woulde folow Marcus Steppes in go-
verning the Empyre: having not onely the surname

180

The seconde booke

fo. xxix

he had of Pertinar, but also his full mynde content. By this talk he wan hym selfe muche fauour. But many of the auncyent men, knowyng his accusidome subtilty, tolde theyz frendes pzyuelpe, that he was a deceyfull man, bente unto fraude, and a meat dissem-
bler, caring for nothing, so that he might obtaine that he thoughte his owne auantage. The whiche reporte of the Elders experiance dyd afterwarde verifie. Se-
uerus then remayned but a fewe dayes in the Cyte: but hauyng bestowed on the people many gyftes, and aboundingly rewarded the Souldours: amongest whome he elected the strongest and balyanteste into theyz places (that were erthe dyscharged) for the garde of hys person, he furthwyth prepared hys journey to-
wardes the Drent, whiles Pyger lay styll and gaue hys mynde vnto the wantonnes of Antyoche. Thin-
kyng it beste to make hast that (beyng unloked for) he myght oppresse Pyger vnpuruaied of strengthe to res-
yste hym. Wherefore he comauanded the Souldours The pre-
to make them selues ready, and after he had gathered paracyo-
togither bandes of men from euerys coaste, mustered of Seue-
rus a-
ll the yowthe in Italpe, sente for the residue of the Il-
lyrian armie remaining in Thrase, and with no lesse gynste
dylygence gotten a great navye and fylled all the Ita-
lian galleyes of. in. orders wyth Souldours armed, Thrase.
Pyger. he brought to gyther wyth incredyble celerytie abou-
daunce of al necessaries. For he knew well that there
neded a great power agaynst h naciōs, inhabytyng h Europe,
parte of the earthe that is oppysyte vnto Europe: all
the whyche dyd wyth one mynde folowe and fauour
Pyger. Thereforse after thys sorte dyd Seuerus ap-
parayle hys armie to the warre. But the man, beyng
prouydent & of a forecallyng wytte, suspected muche
the armie of Englande, who were verye myghtye,
and warrelyke, and of them was ruler one Albinus,
a manne of the ordre of Senatours, whyche had bene Albinus
traded in greate wealth of all richesse and pleasures.
Thys man Seuerus thoughte good to wynne by crast
vnto hym, least of the same, syred wyth hys ryches,
3. ill. byned

The historie of Herodian

bynred, armye and renowme (all prompte prouacaytions to couetynge of thempye) woulde chalenge the domynyon of all thynge vnto hym selfe: and whyle斯
Seuerus were blyved wth the warres in the Oxyente, take possesyon of Rome, not farre dysstaunte from Englande. And therfore he determined to allore vnto hym wth a colours of honoure, Albynus beyng syngle, lyghte of credyte, and beleuyng Seuerus, for that in hys letters myllynges he protested all thynge by solempne orthe. Therfore calling hym Cesar, and prouisynge hym the partycypacyon of hys Empyre, he preuented hys ambycyon. He sente lettres also vnto hym full of gentle commendacyons, whereby he desyred hym chedly to take vpon hym the charge of thempye, sayinge that it neaded suche a noble manne, and of suche dyscreate age as he was. Hym selfe (he sayde) was olde and heredw the gowte, and hys twoo sonnes verye yonge. The whyche Albynus credytyng, accepted gladlye the honoure: beyng toyfull that he obtained hys desyre wthoute batayle or other trouble. And Seuerus (that al thynge myghte leame more credyble,) sente lettres of lyke tenor vnto the Senate: commandyng the moneye to be coyned wth the stamp of Albynus picture, hys Image to be erected, and other honoures to be done vnto hym, whereby he establisshed the trusse of hys beneuolence. When he hadde thus prouidentlye synyllshed thys dryste (beyng oute of feare of the assayres in Englande, and hauynge ga-
thered togyther aboute hym the Illyrian Legyons and all other thynge nedefull) he dyd set forwarde hys hoste agaynst Syger. As for the places where in hys Journey he arrested, what Orazions he made in ebery Cypte, what meruaplosse wonders appered, what Legyons he passed, and synallye what con-
flictes there were, and what numbers on bothe sides were slayne, the same all Hystorographers, especy-
allye the Poetes treatyng of thys matter, and the whole lyfe of Seuerus, do verye plenteously make mencyon

The seconde booke.

Fo. xxx.

mentyon of in theyr wrytes. But I entende to put in wrytyng thynge markeable knownen vnto me, done by the space of seuentye yeares vnder manye and dyuersle Princes. And therfore
I wyll touche the chyessesse thynge done
by Seuerus: wrythoute or sauour
saynyng anye thynge (as I
le they haue done whyche
wrote in that age) or
elles ouerlyppe
vnspeken
anye thynge that shall
seame wrothye
memor
rye.

The eande of the Seconde booke of Herodian.

1111.

The

**C The Argumente of the thyrd
booke of Herodysall.**

HE begynnyng of the Thyrd booke
dothe crete of the batailes betwene
Seuerus and Piger, and of the pre-
paracion of the same. Then after of
the deathe of Piger, of the crueltye
of Seuerus which would by Treas-
son hauen Albynus, whome
he had taken into the rule of them-
pyre. Consequentye of the ouerthowe of Albynus
men, and Albynus owne death. Of the bygge and ex-
pedycyon made by Seuerus into the Orient, of tham
bycyon of Plautianus and hys death. After that
the dyscorde betwene the twoo brethren Se-
uerus sonnes, and of the viage made by
Seuerus wryth his Sonnes into
England, where he died. And
the eande of the Thyrd
booke treateth of An-
toninus, Se-
uerus eldeste Sonnes crueltye,
and howe he fayned for a
while to be agreed with
hys brother Ge-
ra. C. D

C The

**C The thyrd booke of
Histories of Herodysall.**

fo. xxx



So the Wooke preceedyng
we haue at lenght openid
the deathe of Pertinax, the
murder of Julianus, with
the comming of Seuerus
into the Cytie, and his ex-
pedicion agaistre Piger.
who (when he suspected
no liche mater) hearyngs
that Seuerus was in full
possession of Rome, taken
as Emperour by the Se-
nate, and that the hole Illyrian armie was commyng
against hym by lande and sea, (had hys mynde won-
derfullye troubled, and hys courage meruaylosely
daunted. Neuerthelesse he gaue farrwith commann-
dement to the Presyderes, and rulers of the Provin-
ces, to defende and stoppe all their passages, haunes. Parthia
and Streypes: And sente to the Kynges of Parthia, Ar- Armenia
menia, and Acrenia, for ayde. But the Armenia King Acrenia
answered that he woulde take neyther parte, but one
lye defende hys Realme, & the comming of Seuerus.
The Parthian Kyng, hat him worde, that he wolde
commaunde by commyng on the nobles of his Realme,
to mister and gather thair pouers togythers: For so
was he accustomed whiche he shoulde make warre, be-
cause the Parthians haue no mercenary Souldiours,
or appoynted armie. And the Acrenians were sent
hym for ayde certayne barchers, by the Kyngie Barle- Barle-
minus, the whiche then signid in that Realme. The minus.
reste of his power, he lusted of the Sowldiours that
were present, and many he gathered amonges the peo-
ple, especially of the Amiochians (who beynge through
the lightnes of their age, and the laus of Piger stur-
red) dyd more rashely, then prudently, proffer them
B. 1. selues

Taurus selues. Niger then stopped with a myghty municion, and strunge wall, the streites, and broke places of the mountaine Taurus: thinking that the same rocke and steape Hyll, wolde be an assured strunge defence vnto the Driente. For Taurus riseng in great heighth

Cappado betwene Cappadocia, and Cilicia, dothe denye the
Bizanti Cilicie nacions, inhabityng the Septentrion, and the Driente. He set also a Garriso in Byzantium, which was the goodlyest Cite of all Thrace, and at that tyme florishynge with strengthe and rychesse. For beyng sett

Thrace. in a narowe gulle of the See Propontis, it receaved tribute, and sythe from the water, and posseslyng on the other syde large and fruytfull syeldes, gate lucre

Propontis. by both these Elenites. And therfore Niger thought it best to strengthe this towne, that the shippes myght be prohibited passage thoghē those streyghtes out of

Asye. Europe into Asye. This Cite was compassed with a strōge and myghty wall, builded of four square stonye of Milecum, with so small and streight ioyntes, that a man would not iudge it of many pieces, but all of one continuall stonye. And yf a man behelde the ruyn at this present remainyng, he would wonder, eyther at the arte of them whiche synte builded it, or at the strengthe of them whiche destroyed it. After this soore

Miletum therfore, dyd Niger oder hys assayres, with verye ware, (as he supposed) and circumspecte counsell. Seuerus on the other part, made all the hast that myght

be, with his armes and prouisio, resting in no place. And hearyng that Byzantium was fortifyed wryth a garrison of Souldours, and knowyng it also to be a verye strunge towne, he tourped vnto Cyzicun.

Cyzicu When this was declared vnto Demilianus he gouernour of Asye, vnto whome Niger had committed the charge and chiese rule of the warre, he remoued vnto Cyzicun also, leadinge with hym all the Legions, whiche eyther Niger hadde sente, or hymselfe mustred. When it came to strokes, after certaine skirmishes egerly foughte, the victorie syually fell to Seuerus: and all the hoste of Niger was slayne, and putte to flyghte. Wherby the hartes of Dicentall enabyl-

tantes

tantes were abated, and the Illyrians verye muchs encoraged. Many ther were, that thought Niger to be in the beginning of the batayle betraped by Demilianus. And soz proueso of their opinion, some of them sayde that he enyued Niger, disdaininge that he, who a lytle before was hys succellour in Syrie, shold now not onely be hys superior, but also hys Soueraygne, and Emperour. Other saye that hys chylldren (whom Seuerus syndyng in Rome, helde hys custody) perswaded him by letters to regardē their life and safetie. For this circumspecte Counsell dyd Seuerus put also in vse. It was the usage of Commodus, to deteyne with him, the chylldren of thole whiche had the charge to gouerne the prouinces, as pledges of their faulth allegiaunce and loyaltye. And therfore Seuerus, as soone as he was made Emperour, (whyles Iulianus yet lyued) sente certayne into the Cite to steale priuily hys chylldren, leste they shoulde be in anye other mans custodye. And as soone also as he entered into Rome, he caused to be apprecheded all the chylldren of the Capitaines, and of all other whiche bare any comynen offyce in all the Driente, and Asye, to the ende, that by thole Hostages, he myghte cause the Chiueitains of Niger, for the sauergarde of their children, to betrate thei master: or elles, yf thei remayned faulth, it myghte lye in hys power, to auenge hys anger against them in slayng of thei chylldren. Nowe Nigers Souldours beyng dysconfyded at Cyzicun, fledde, euerye manne as faste as he could: some esca- pyng by the Mountaines of Armenia, and some co- uetyng to passe Tauris into Asye, & Gallatia, that they myghte put them synges in places of municion. Then marched the Armea of Seuerus by the plaines of Cizicun, into Bithynia the nexte region. But whan the same was spredde, that Seuerus hadde the vicerie, a sodayne sedis, invaded the Cyties there abouete, not so moche throughē anye hatred, or auyrye, they bare vnto the Emperors, as throughē moxall contencion amonge them selues.

Armea.

Taurus

Asye.

Gallatia.

Bithi-

nia.

Thistorie of Herodiu

The same was an olde accusstmed vice of f Grecias, who whyles they were at dyscencion wthyn them selues, and endeoured to destroy every man that excelled in dignite, had nowe consumed all Grece. And being within the selues worse and wasted, were first made Captiues and slaves vnto the Macedons, and after the bondemen and djudges of the Romaynes. That pessiferouse calamite of debate and discencion, thered notable and florishing Cyties in our tyme. For immediatly after the battayle at Cizicum in Wythinia, the Nicomedians revolte vnto Seuerus, seding hym Ambassadours, to promulge hym they woulde receave his armie, and submytte them selues vnto hys gouernaunce. On the other syde, the Pycians stirred tertayning hys Souldiors, as well those whiche were escaped from the fytte, as them whiche he had sent to defede Wythinia. Out of these Cities, the Souldiers, as oute of their Campes, encountred, and skirmished toghthers: and after a greate battayle foughten, Seuerus obtayned the vpper hande. The Souldiors of Pyger beyng from thence also dryue, fledde vnto the streaptes of Laurus, and defended the enclosed muntions. But Pyger, (leaving there as greate a Garryson, as he thoughte nedefull) went him selfe vnto Antioche, to leuye an other hooсте of men, and more men. In this whyle the Arme of Seuerus departed oute of Wythinia and Galacie, entred into Cappadocia, and beganne to assaulte the Bulwarkes, and muntions there. Where they were wth many sorowes, and labours afflicted, the waye beyng verye narowe, and sharpe, and they whiche stode aboue, thowing stonnes, and mosse fyerly syghtinge, and by that meanes fewe kepyng backe a greate number. For the passage is wonderfull strayne, whereof the one syde is fortfyed wth a huge and hyghe Rocke, and the other is full of waters, falling verye swystely downe from the steape hilles. And Pyger had besydes strengthened it with a mighty and fronge wall, that therby, hys enemy my myghte on every syde be forbydden entry.

In

The thirde boke.

Fo. xxxiii.

In the meane tym, whyles these thynges were in doyng in Cappadocia, the sedicion of certayne Cyties, began to sypre wth like dyscord. That is to wete, the Cyte of Laodiciam Syria, abhorring the Anti-Laodiciens, and the Cite of Tyre in Phenicia, detesting cra. the Werinthians. Thowþch two Cyties hearyng Syria. of Pygers discouertur stoke downe all his honours, & Tyrus Images, & made ioyfull acclamacions vnto Seuerus, Phen wherof when Pyger, beyng busye at Antioche, was cra. certisched, albeit he were at other tymes of a meeke nature, and gentle dyspoicyon, yet beyng iustly moued with their untrouth and ceulce, he sent vnto bothe the Cities, all the Mauritanian Slynghers that were in hys seruice, and wth hem a compayne of archers, whome he comaunded to slea every one they encountrid, and to destroy and burne the Cyties selues. And truely, the Goozes (being a racyon naturally fierce, and cruell, couertyng sligghter, sturdy in enterpises, and lyke me desperate despising all daunger of death) dyd soleynly oppresse the Laodicians: and (hauyng tormented the people ther wth all kynde of cruelty, and ransaked the Cytie) departed from thence vnto Tyre. The whiche (after they had despoiled euer man of his substance, and comycted muche myrde) they wholly burned and rased to the earth. Whyles these cruell actes were thus executed in Syria, and whyles Pyger was busied in waging and mustering an other armie, Seuerus Souldiors besyged the munycyon of the mountayne Taurus: beyng verye pensyfe, and wthout hope of byctoye, for that it was by it selfe myghte and inþeygnable, and defended also wth the steape & hygh hill. But when they were nowe wearyed, and theyz enemyes restyng in safetoye, soleynly loo in the nyghte powred downe vehemently shoures, whiche fylled all places with snow and rayne, (as commone in Cappadocia the winter is very roughe and tempestuous, chiedly at the mountayne Taurus: Wherby sodayn brooke brast furþ wth a meruaylous troublesome streme, and beyng letted from hysr myghte castle (or the munycyon stop-

B. iii.

pey

Illius
Sinus.
Theatre

Darius.
Alexander

Alexan-
dria.

The bat-
tale be-
place, but theyz fortune was also lyke. For they re-
mayned

The Historie of Herodian.

ped hys passage) it waxed more huge & violent, so that when the wall (nature ouercomminge arte) could not sustayne so myghtye a brunts, the ioyntes beyng by lytle and lytle loused, and the soundacyous from their places remoued, h[er] streme made to it selfe open way. Then the garrison, whyche garded the entrye, ones that perceyued, dreading least they shold be by their enemyes enclosed, (no stays or defence to the contrarie remayning, assoone as the water were asswaged) they forsoke theyz stacions, and made hysle for them selues by flight. Then the Seuerian Souldours resyed, and hartened them selues, as though he thym mortall Goddes guyded them. And knowing that the place was of theyz enemyes abandoned, they easelyle wþþoutte resistance passed ouer Taurus, and entred into Cilicia. Pyger hearynge hereof, hauinge leuyed an huge armie, (but yet not skylfull of warlike traueyle) made greate hast towardes them by long iourneys, a wonderfull multytude of men, and almost al the youthe of Antyoche, folowing him as their generall gouernour, and pryncipall Capptayne, wþþ muche myxthe, but nothyng comparable unto the Ilyzian Souldours, eyther in prowesse, or knowledges of warfare. In this araye they arived nyghe vnto a place named Sinus Ilicus, in a myghtye and large playne, the whiche beyng on euerye syde enuorned wþþ hyghe mountaynes in fourme lyke a Theatre, hadde a steepe banke, extendyng farre alonge by the Sea, as it were a syelde, fasshyoned by nature conuenyence to darreigne batayle in. Bea the report is, that in the same place, at a cruell and very bloudy batayle, Darius was by Alexander vanquished, and taken, (thenhabitantes of the Septentrion then pruaylyng against the nacions of thorient. There remaineth at this day, as a token & witnes of the same victorie, the Cittie of Alexandria, situate vpon an high hyltherby, and a brasen Image of Alexander, by whome the Cittie is so named. It chanced besides, that not onely the mytynge of Seuerus and Pygeris armyes in that batayle be- place, but theyz fortune was also lyke. For they re-

The thirde boke.

To. xxxvii.

mayned on bothe syde aboute eueninge tyde, readye thene to the batayle. And they passed over the nyght in hope, Seuerus and feare, wþþoutte rest or sleape. And at the Sonne & Pyger. ryþinge, the Capptaynes on eyther syde haþynge enþoured theyz Souldours, ran togithir with an incredibl stoutenes, as though he in that tynall batayle, they wþulde ende the yelte of theyz hope and feare (for tyme at that seaso arbitratyng who shold be Emperour of Rome. When they had of longe space syersely foughten, there was so greate slaughter commyted, that the ryuers flowing alonge by the plaine, did run into the Sea with gretter abouaunce of bloud, ths of water. Finally the Drentalles were overthowen and discomfited, & the Illirians pursued them at their backes so nyghe, that many of them beyng wounded, were drenched in the Sea. The other fledde into ths high hilles, nighe at hande, where they were by þ pursuers slaine, and with hem a great numbre of rurall people, who came togithir out of the nexte Cityes and Villages, to beholde the batayle from abone, as from a sure holde and stronge Fortresse. But Pyger hym selfe escaped from he syelde vpon a swyft Courser vnto Antyoche, from whence also, (despayryng of all good successe,) and leyng the people amased and runnyng to and fro, lamentynge wþþ howlynges and teares, the deathe of theyz bretherne and chylderne he furthwþþt fledde. And beyng hidden in a certayn village of the same Region, was there soud by the horsemen, and beheaded. This ende of life had The deþ Pyger, receiving wþþly reward for his delayes, and of Pyger protracting of tyme. A man (as they say) in other thymes very moderate & upight. After Pyger was slain, Seuerus incōtinently did put to death all his frendes which either of their own free willes, or by constraint, had fauored him: onely he pardoned the Souldours, who through feare of Seuerus wrach, were fled ouer Tigre, vnto the Barbariens. And in dede to the was Tigria, a great multytude escapaþ. Wherby it came to passe, þ the barbarous nacions vþþ thence forwarde, wared wþþe valiant, & stronge in fight against þ Romaines, beyng

B. lll.

The Historie of Herodian.

beyng onely expert before to shote wylth the bowe wth
theyr horses, not apparayled in harness, or bolde to
fyghte wylth speare, and sworde, but covered wylth
lyghte, and longe garmentes, they did most common-
lye throwe theyr darter, and shote theyr arrowes in
fleyng awaye. But after that many of the Romayne
Souldours, and Arctysciers, came to inhabyte and
leade theyr lyues in those Regyons, the barbarous
people learned, not onely to weare armure, but also
to forge, and make the same. When Seuerus had sy-
nysched hys assayres in the Dystente, according to his
owne mynd, he toke an ardente desyre to make warre
vpon the Armenian kynge, & to conquer the Realme
of Parthia: bothe the whiche Syger had before also
cavated vnto hym. But yet desferryng those warres
vntyll an other tyme, he bega to inuen by what mea-
nes he myght assuredly establishe the Romayne Em-
pyre to hym selfe and hys chyldryen. For, Syger being
dispatched, there remained no more, sauing onely Al-
bynus, who he reckened woulde do lytle after his
mynde, or stonde hym in small steade, the rumour be-
yng alreadye spredde, that he blusped the dignytie, &
name of Cesar, ouer arrogantlye: and that manye of
the Senators had wrytten pnyuelle vnto hym, encou-
ragyng hym to retourne to Rome, whyles Seuerus
were absente and busyed in the Dystente: for all the no-
blytye wryshed Albynus Emperour, because he was
descended of noble and famouse lygnage, him selfe be-
yng a yonge man of great towardnes, and gentle dis-
polycyon. All whiche ententes when Seuerus knew,
thynkyng it not good to worke wylth open enmytie,
and manysche warre, (hauyng none occasion that
myghte seme honest thereunto) he determinyd to cy-
cumuente hym wylth preuy treason, and close deceit.
Wherfore he sente wylth letters of Commynsion, vnto
Albynus, certayne of the mosie trusyte and faythe-
full Purseuautes, whiche vsed to carue thempierall
letters: whome he comauanded, that hauyng dely-
uered those lettres vnto hym, they shold say they had
other secrete matters to declare, so that al other were
comauanded

Albynus.

The thyrde booke.

Fo. XXXV.

comauanded to ausidaunce. And then getinge hym
from his garde, thei shold sodeinly murder hym.
He delyuered poyson also vnto them, wherwith they
shold yf it were possible allure his taster, eyther of
meate, or drincke, to dyspatche him. But Seuerus
truthe was suspected of Albynus frendes. And there-
fore thei admouished hym to beware of that false and
delyall person, full of disceit, & treason. For he was
manifessly knowne to be a periured, and untrue man:
hauing by their owne childeyne, entyled Nigres Ca-
pitaynes, to betray their maister: And then, after he
had abused their labour, and brought all hys purpose
as he wold to pisse, thame bothe them and theyr chil-
drene. Wherfore hym actes them selues made appa-
raunte hys vnsyfthul, and noughe dysposycyon.
And soz that caule Albynus strengthened hym selfe
with a greater and stronger garde then he was accu-
stomed, permitting no messenger sent from Seuerus
to be lette in rashely vnto hym, except he synte laide a
syde his weapon, and were throughly serched. Now
when the purseuautes were arryed fram Seuerus,
and hauyng openly desuered their letters, sayd that
they had other secrete instructions, to vter pnyuelle
vnto hym, Albynus incontinenly suspecting the ma-
ister, caused them to be apprehended: And then by seue-
rall examinacions hauyng founde out the truthe, and
by order perceyued the hole treason, caused execu-
tion oute of hande to be done vpon the offenders. And
prepared hym selfe agaist Seuerus, as his appasit
enemye. The whiche thynge when Seuerus knew,
beyng a man of wrathfull, and cruell nature, he re-
solved, to bynde no lenger the despyte and hatred he
bare to Albynus. Wherfore he called the hole armis
togithers, and made th' oracion vnto them.

Co man oughte to embrayde me of ouer moche
lyghtnes, for that I haue heretofore done, neyther ac-
compte me false, and vngratefull towarde hym wh^o Seuerus.
I repute for my frende. I haue performed all thy-
nges. Bea I haue receyved hym into the secrete of my
dominion, beynge now moche perclipe establisched
L.1. the

The Historie of Herodian

the which thing a man wylle scarselye doo to his owne brother. And that whiche you haue vnto me onely deuyered, the same haue I with hym participated. But all thiese our bountefull benefites, hath Albinus moste shamefully recompensed, contempnyng our powlesse, forgetting his allegiaunce, and conueyng our with perill, the hole rule, wherof he myght haue bene partaker without batayle, or contencion. He feareth not y Goddes by whō he hath so ofte sworne. Neither dothe he consyder, or fausure your labourosis travayles, whyche you haue wylth so greate rehowne and gloriye for our sake sustayned. And assuredly, him selfe wanted not the profites of our successes: Pea hadde he obserued his fidelice, the greatest poxion had ben his. And as a man, yf he be authour of myschiese, shall be accompted vnygheous, so yf he reuenge nat the injurye receyued, he shalbe esteemed a coward. When we made warre agaynst Niger, we had not so iulfe and lawfull causes of anger, bycause we hated him, not, as a bereuer, and robber of the pyre, for the same hanging in the myddes, and then wauering in controverysye, eyther of vs affected, and dwele vnto him selfe with equall enclosure. But Albinus, neglecting hys loyaulty, allegiaunce, and othe, after he hath obtained by our large liberalitee, the honours whiche are onesye geuen to our lawfull children, had rather become our noysome enemys, thē our fredely familiar. Wherefoze, as we bewtifyed hym with our manyfolde benefites of honour, and glory, even so, let vs nowe wylth force, and strength, conuince, and daunte, hys traytorous, and feable harte. As for tharmy of that small Ilande, is not able to suffayne or abyde the brunte of your myght. For seyng ye haue yourre selfes almoste alone, by your owne valyaunt powlesse, subdued the hole orient, whe wold doute, but at this preset through the ioyning of so great power (soz here is welnyne the hole Romaynre armis) you would not ouerthow and put to fyghe so smal a number, who hathe serued pitalite: soz who is ypraye you ignozaunte of his vngreuous

The thyrde booke.

To, xxxvi.

luptuousse lyse, more greable to heardes of Swine, thē to Legiōs of Souldeours. Let vs therfore valiantly set forward against hym, wth the stoutenes we haue accustomed, assyng our selues in the Goddes, (so wchekly by hym cōtempned) as principall guides of ours boyage, and myndes of the victorious signes by vs heretofore erected, the whiche he hath also utterly despised. Whē Seuerus had this moch spokē, incōinēly thole atme pronounced Albinus their commune enemy: And hauing received Seuerus wth ioyful acclamacions, & shewed by theyr shoutes their good willes towardes hym, thei entreated y mā wth an inestimable hope added to his enteynyme. Wherefore, after he had liberally distributed a boches the Souldeours grete gif-tes, he led the al fayvours against Albinus: hauning set also a crewe of mē auxiliē & rale Bizātium, which Bizantē was yet shut after the receipt of Nigers Souldeours, um clene. The whiche Citie being at legh by sumpue cōquered, destroyed & defaced, the Theater, the hote bates, & al other goodly buildinges therof vterly destroied, & it selfe reduced into y forme of a vilage, was giue vnto the Perin Perinthi thias, as Antioche was vnto the Laodicias. Then he ans- exacted greate somes of money, to repayze the Cityes, which the Nigriā Souldeours had batered & despoiled. Hym selfe cōtinued his tory woute intermissiō, nor gretly regarding y hōle daies, or any patnefull laboz. For he was equally paſt of colde & heate, trauailing ofte times bareheaded, vper y highe & craggy mountaines, in the bytter & hanre winter, when the snow fell cōtinually out of y skie. Wherby he stirred his Souldeours, as with his owne ſāple, vnto alacrite of minde, and ſufferaunce of laboz, vse trauailes. For thei were not cōſtrained to abide yse paines throuḡ anſeare, or ſtraite law, & cōmaument, but rather throuḡ a certaine emulaciō, & ex ample of their Prince. He ſent certayne also beforē to take the creites of the Alpes, and to defende the entayl, and paſſages into Italie. Now when Albinus haerde, that Seuerus made no delaye in the mater, but was enī at hād being before, as it were in a dreame, and paſſyng the tyme in yds- U.ū. pleasures

pleasures, he was now ryken wyth a meruaprouse and sodeyne feare. Neuerthelesse he furthewth lauched out of Britaine unto the coste of Fraunce, right ouer aneaste it, where on the shore he pytched hys campe, and sente letters unto the Rulers of the nerte nations, desyryng them to sende hym money, and bicaualles, for the ayde, and sustenaunce of his armee. Thei that obayed his commaundemente, or reuelle, byd mosse unhappely prouyde for hem selues, bryngynge after the battayle put to deathe wyth dyuerse terrible tormentes. And those whiche set at nought hys rule and power (although thei did the same more happily, then prudently) yet escaped they without harme or damage, when as the chaunce and fortune of thynge dyscerned bothe theyz counselles. When the Seuerian power was entered into Fraunce, the skympshes were lyght and bolant at the syrfe, butyll at length, the grete confilct was geuen at Lions, a great and riche Citye. For Albynus remayninge hym selfe

The batayle be-
twene
Seuerus
& Albinus
The En-
glishmen
valiaute
warriours
within the Citye, sente furthe his Souldiours to the bataile. And when y two armes ioyned hadde to hadde, the batayle endured a longe space with equall strengthe Seuerus on eyther syde, so that the fortune of the victorye depended doubtfull. For the Britens were nothyng inferior to the Illirians, eyther in stowenes of stonemake, or gredines of slaughter. Thus in the syrfe onset, the frontes of two mosse valiaute armes, did to neyther syde enclyne, or ones recule. Pea (as manye Authours of the same sygne (who wrote it nat for any perciallsauoure, but accordyng to the truthe haue leste in memorie,) the whyng of Albynus Armee was the better, and of more strengthe, agynste the bande that Seuerus ledde: so that he fiedde, and fell from hys horse, and throwenge awaie hys cote armure, hydde hym selfe. But whyle the Britens pursued, reiosyng even as perfecte Conquerours, sodeynlye, appeared Letus one of Seuerus Capitaines, wyth a freshe Crewe of men: who was reproued and yll spoken of by the Souldiours, as though he hadde of purpose houered, for to see the chaunce

Letus.

85

The thide booke. Fo. xxxvii.

of the batayle, protracted the tyme, and detained them from settynge towardes, that he myghte therby haue caught the Romayne Empyre to hym selfe. For he moued not a soote towardes the feldes, before he was certesyed of Seuerus onerthowre. Whiche suspycion, the happe afterwardes ratyfied. For after al thynge were let in ordre, and Seuerus was at heires easle, althoughe he benefycially rewarded all hys other Capitaines with great and riche gifte, yet being mynbefull of Letus, his loyaltie, and Crealon, he put hym (as was expydente) to deathe. But thei thynge were done afterwardes. Then (as we before rehersed) at Letus armuall, the Seuerians recouered perlyte hope, and Seuerus hym selfe was put vpon hys horse, and gyerte wyth a robe of purple. And seyng the Albynians (who thoughte them selues vctoryous banquishers) lechtered abrode oute of ordre, ihys freshe bande of men sodeinlye set vpon them. And synallye (after a lytle resystance) compelled them to turne theyz backes and ffe away, whome beyng ouerthowen and dysperded, the Seuerians pursued, and entred into the Citye. The number of them that were on eyther parte slayne, is dyuerselye leste in memorie, as it pleased the myters of that age. Dute of hand than was the Cyte of Lyons ransaked, burnit, and destroied, and the heid of Albinus tryken of, and The dede broughte to Seuerus. Thus were two notable victoires obtained, in y East & North. So that there is no thyng, that a man may compare, vnto the contencions and factes of Seuerus: yf he consider, eyther the multytude of men, the rysing vp of nacions, the nubie of batayles, or elles the lengthe, and spedye celeryte of tourneyes. In dede, the affayres of Cesar Pompeius, (eyther of them hauyng to his assystance Pompey the Romayne Souldiours) were great, and merualous: so were those of A. I. agaynste Anthony, or Pompeius sonnes. And so were the batayles of Antonis, bothe Civile, and Forayre, betwene Silla, and Ma. Silla. But a man shal nearely fynde suche an other Martius, as ihys: who dispatchel awaie thre Emperours alredye,

The historie of Herodian

The no. alreadye possessed of the domynyon, who crenimend
ble actes fed with fraude and coulne the Cittie armye whiche
of Seuerus garded Rome selfe, and the Senate house: who also
procured one of the Princes to be murdered wythin
thempervall Palayce, destroyed an other in the Ory-
ent, (whych obtained the chiefe gouernement, & was
erst by the Romaines taken as Emperour) & finally,
broughte into his subiectyon the thyrde, whiche was
endued with the name, honour, and authority of Ce-
sar. This ende of life had Albin⁹, enjoying but a smal
while his mortall and bloudye dignitie. After whose
death Seuerus powred out al the Irous crueltie, and
fverce wrath of his mynde, vpon the frenedes & allies of
Albynus. And syrst hauyng sente hys heade vnto the
Cittie, and commaunded that it shoulde be fastened o-
penly vpon an highe gybbet, in the latter eande of an
Epistle, (wherin he certifed the people of his victo-
rye) he wrote thys also, that he sent Albin⁹ head vnto
Rome of purpose to be loked on, to thētent, theyshold
take example evident, what them selues shoulde lyke-
wise suffer. Then after he had set in ordre thassayres
of Brytayne, deuided into iiij. partes thadministracy-
on of thole Isle, and appeased all Fraunce, accordyng
(as he thought) to hys owne mynde, and put to deathe
all Albynus frenedes, (whom eyther free wil, or nec-
essite hadde ioyned vnto hym) he set forwardes im-
mediately towardes Rome: leadyng thole armys with
hym, to thētent he might seme y more terrible. And
hauyng fynished his journey with swifte sped, as he
accustomed, being enemys mortall vnto Albin⁹ fren-
edes, he entered into the Cittie, wher al the people met
& received hym, wth great reverence, & joyfull shoutes.
And thole Senate togithers welcomed hym. Netwith-
standing, feare had greatly affonied some of them, for
they were sure, y he wolde not spare the, being of hys
own nature ouer outragious, & the, hauyng probable
occasions of hatred against the. After he was entered
into the Tempel of Jupiter, he there finisched h^{is} accusto-
med rites of sacrifice, & the retorne to thimperial pa-
layce. Anone after he distributed liberallye amonges
the

The thyrde booke.

fo. xxxviii.

the people riche giftes, in token of victory, rewardeyd
souldours wth great sumes of money, & gaue the many
thinges they never received before. For firste he aug-
mented the substance of their corne, & permitted them
to weare ringes of golde, & every of the to kepe a wo-
ma in his house. Al which being dysagreable to war-
like discipline, scamed theretofore vnyprofytalbe to
the which were euer prest & ready to the batayle. And
he syrst of all other altered the austericite & hardnes of
theyr liuing, the toleraunce of trauailes, and all their
accustomed reverence towarde their Capitaynes:
hauing brought y Souldiors acquainted wth the gredy
gaping for money, and the loue of y Cittie comedines.
When he had after this sort, set these assaires in good
orde, as him selfe supposed, he came at length into the
Senate house: And there sittynge in theperial Throne
he began with a cruell oracion, to detecte the frenedes
of Albynus, shewing furth, certaine of their pryn^g E-
pistles which he had foud with Albinus. He reproued
some, for that they bestowed many bofisful giftes vpon
him: And menaced al other, which eyther fauored
thorientalles, or were of familiare acquaintance wth
Albynus. By these meanes, he vyd wythout respecte,
put to deathe, euery notable and prudente Senatour,
al other y bare any rule in the prouynces, or excelled
in byth, or ryches: auengyng hym selfe, (as he made
semblaunte) vpon hys enemys, but in deathe, cou-
tousenesse was the onely cause, wherwth he of al other
Emperors was most intached. For as he gaue place
to no man (were he euer so commendable) in pacience
of mynde, perseveraunce in laboures, and glorie of
warfare, euен so, beyng aboue all measure addicted
vnto auarice, he heaped treasure, throughe vniuste
murders, executed vpon euerye tryflying cause, & som-
time without anye at all, enjoying thempyre, rather
throughe force, and feare, then anye benevolence, or
good wyll of the people. Neuertheles, at the syrst, he
would seme familiare, & assable, in settynge out gorge-
ous shewes, and pageauntes of al sortes, wth the siring
of an. C. cruelle beautes at a tyme, the whyche he had
sent for, out of our owne, and Barbarous Regyons.

L.iiij.

He

He gaue besydes, ryche rewardes, and publyshed a sumptuous game, gettyng from all partes valyuant Champsions, and cunnyngge wrestlers. We sawe also in the tyme of hys Kegyne, sundrye playes of all sortes, set furthe in all the Theatres, with superplaycations, and watches, lyke the sacryfyses of Ceres. The same are called Seculer, celebrated (as they reporte) at the ende onely of euery thyrde age. And the common Cryers went throughe al the Citye, and all Itaile, callynge all men to the playes, whiche they never sawe before, nor therafter shoulde se: sygnysyng thereby, that the space of tyme betwene the celebration passed, i that was to come, exceded al thage of a man. Now Seuerus, after he had soiourneda while at Rome, and partycypated the regymente of empere wth hys ii. sonnes, percyuyng hym selfe to be famouse as yet, but by one Cyryle hystorye obtained agaynste the Romayne power, (for the whiche also he had refusid to Tryunphe) determinyd to becom notable, wth the ouerthzowe, and standarde of the Barbarvens. Wherfore, vnder coloure of reuenging hym selfe vpon Barsemius kyng of the Atenyens, (who had assyld Pyger) he led hys armye into thoren. And there beyng at the verye poynte to invade Armenie Armenia, he was preuented by the kyng therof, whosente vnto hym wyllynglye, bothe pledges and prestes, humblye deslyngye, that he myghte entre into friendshyppe, and conclude a peace wth hym. After the whiche done, Seuerus, leyng hys purpose in Armenia proceade as hym selfe wylshed, helde on hys journey towardes the Atenyans. And Agbarus the kyng of the Osrohenians, came also and yelshed hym selfe vnto hym. And deslyngye hys chyldzen as hostages, amplysyed the trusse of hys truthe, and loyaltie conceyued, by sendyng to the increase of hys armye, a greate power of Archers. From hence Seuerus passed ouer the Realme of Interamna, and the syeldes of the Albenyans, and made a rode into Arabye the ferrele, from whence come all the sweete & odiferous herbes, whiche we vse for pleasant vynys,

Ceres.
Seculer
playes.

Barse-
mius.

Agba-
rus.
Osrohe-
niens.

Interra-
na.
Albeny-
ans.

poys, and perfumes. And having there destroyed many Cities, & villages, and wasted the hole countrey, he entred into Atenia. There he besyrged the Citye of Atras, beyng buylde upon an high Rocke, capas Atras besyrged. with a wonderfull puissaunt garrison of Archers.

Wherfore the Seuerian hoste, assaulted this Citye, with all the force thei had, and moued to the walles, towres, & engyns of all sortes, omittynge nothyng, that might availe to the assaulte, and batterye of the same. On the other syde, the Atenyans stowtely descended theyre Citie, shootinge, and thowring downe, arowes, dardes, and stones, wherewith thei gretely vexed the Seuerians. Thei threwe downe also, earthy vesseles fylid with certayne wynged, venemous lytle beastes: The whiche falling vpon the eyes, and faces of the Seuerians, or elles creapyng by lytle, and lytle, in at the open partes of their bodies, dyd ryghte harpely stynge, and wounde them. The Romayne Souldiours besydes were fallen into diseases, beyng vnable to away with the seruenties of the ayre there because it was to extremely hote, throughe the contynuance of the Sonne: so that by thiese calualties, many more of them perished, then by the handes of their enemys. Wherfore Seuerus percyuinge them all soz wearied, and worne, the siege not prospering, and the hoste receyvinge more damage, and losse, the gayne, or profyt, determinyd, before they vitterlye perished, to lede them from thence: very elozowefull, that they departed, withoute achiueng their entended enterpryse. For beyng theretofore accustomed to wyne the victorie in all batayles, thei then accompted them selues overcomen, for that they had not vanquished. But fortune euer moze favorable vnto them, so prouided, that thei retourned not wout any thinge done: but with more fortunate successe, then thei looked for. For the hole armye, beyng shyppeid in sundrye vesseles arrived not (as thei syrste purposed) at the haven of Rome, but throughe the rage, and by violence of the waues, were driven to lande in the cosies of Par. Parthis

Thistorie of Herodian

Ctesiphō thian, nat farre from the Citie of Ctesiphon, wherelin standeth the Palayce royal of the Parthenyā Kinge. Whō then living in resse, and reckening the warres, which Seuerus had with the Aremās, nothing pertinente to his charge, did not in that his yole tranquillite, suspecte, or thinke upon any peril, or myshappe, towardes hym selfe entended. When the Seueria armie was, (as I sayd) by behemencie of weather, driven on lande, at the bankes of this Rovaulme, thei began oute of hāde, to spoyle and rysle all the Cuntry, drūning before them all the heardes of Catel, and flockes of sheepe, thei founde. And burning many villa ges in their waye, thei marched by small toreyes, to the Citye selfe of Ctesiphō, in the which the great Ar tabanus then laye. And there syndenge the Barba rous people vnpurueyed of defens, thei slew all that resisted, lacked the Citi, and carryed away as Capti ues, bothe women, and children. The king hym selfe, with a fewe horsemen, only escaped. His treasure, or namentes, and householde stufse, the Seuerians, as conquerours, sealed vpon, and then retourned. Thus Seuerus, more throughe fauorable fortune, then pruident pollicy, obtayned the Parthian Conquest. Af ter the prosperous atchieuinge wherof, he lente vnto the Senate, and people of Rome, gloriouse Letters, full of ostentacio: & Tables, wherin were gorgeouſlie paynted, and at length sette out, his myghty batailes, and valiaunt victories. For the which the Senate de creed many honours vnto him, and gaue him the sur names of the naciona by hym, before Conquered. In the meane whyle, after this happe in the orientall af faires, he retourned towardes Rome: hauing his two Honnes, (who were then of ripe age) in his Companie. And after he had finished his torey, committed the rule of y prouinces, vnto those which lyked hym best, and misstered the Milians, & Pannonyens, he finally entered into the Citi with Triumphe. The people receyued hym wi joyfull shoutes, and all other Ceremo nies to the same appertaining, vnto whome he grau ted certayne extra dynary holye dayes, sacryfyses, and

Artaba nus.

Milians
Pannoni ens.

The thyrdes boke

Fol. ix.

and shewes. And hauyng gyuen amonges them great giftes, hym selfe also solemnized sundrye play es, for his victo: After this he remained a longe tyme at Rome, late oftentymes in iudgemente, vpon the Cytey controueries, and gaue hys hole mynde to instructe hys chyldren. But they, beynge yonge men, had corrupted their dispositions, wþth sensuall plea sures of the Cyte, and ouermuche delite in riotting, and baulting. The Wzetherne also fel at harpaunce wþthin thei mselues, thoyt debate rysyng of chyldishe contencion, and boylishe brawle, in settyng fourthe cockefightes, & quaylefyghtes, and the wrestlyng of lytle boves. For what souer thei had seene, or hearde in the Theatre, thei euer lyked it dixerly, the one not bate of louyng, that the other did; but the thinge whiche was acceptable vnto thone, incōtinently became odious to two Son the other, they Parasis, and seruautes, egging the mes. to discencion, & flatering them, to thentet, thei might allure thei matthers to thei owne nougthy wyll, & appetites. Wherof when Seuerus hearde, he endeuoured to reconcyle them, & to correcte their corrup ted maners. And then vnto Bassianus (who at that Bassianus tyme enioyed thimperiall dignities & honours, had receyued the surname of Marcus, beynge called Se uerus Antoninus, & was his eldest Sonne) he gaue to wþse the daughter of Plautianus, the Lord great dayster of his householde. This Plautianus, being (as it is reported) by byzthe of base estate, was detec ted, and founde gylyte of sedicion, and other notari ous crimes, & therfore punished wþ banishment. But he wag Seuerus countrey man, borne in Aphrique, and as soone conjecture, nyghe of kyndred vnto hym, but as other surmyse, rather gratefull vnto hym in byzpoys lyuinge, through the flawre, and bewyre of his youth. Hym did Seuerus enhalfe frþ simple and low degré, vnto wþderful abundance of treasure. And giving vnto hym the goddes of man that were condeyned, enriched him aboue all other: restraining this sole only, from the admittynge him into the gouernauance eyre of the empire. The whyche rychedesse, and lyberetie, Plauti he abusyng, omittid no kynde of cruelty, in doing. his.

what pleased hym: and became more outragouse, then anye Prynce ther to so raygynge. His daughter (as is sayde) dyd Seuerus gyue for wife vnto his Sonne. But Antonyne hym selfe was nothynge ioyful of the same, enforcethereunto, rather by necessite, then good wyll. For to the vitternois he detested the mayden, and her father: so that he vled neyther one bed, nor one house wyt her, in suche wylle abhor-
ynge her, that he dayly menaced, to put her father & her vnto deathe, assoone as by hym selfe he shold pos-
sesse chempyre. The whiche when she had estones re-
pozeth vnto her father, and opened howe greatly she
was of her husbande disdaigned, she kyndeled the ma-
ruiaylouslye vnto wrathe. So that Plautianus
(perceyng on the one syde Seuerus to be decrepite
and aged, and many tymes vexed wyt dyseases, espe-
ciallye the gowte, and on the other syde Antonius to
be a fyerse, stoute, and cruell yonge man, became bea-
ry fearefull of hys theateyninges, and determinyd to
commyn some notable myschyf, before hym selfe per-
ryfled. There were manye thynges, whiche enflam-
med hym wyt ardente ambycyon of chempyre.
That is to weete, hys aboundinge of rychesse (the
lyke whereof, no pryuate person at any time thereto-
fore possessed) the obeydence of the Souldoure, the
great honoure he enioyed amonges al the Romaines,
and the ornamente of apparylle, wherein he wente
abrode. For he ware a garmente called Latus Cla-
nius, and hadde bene twylle Consult. He ware also
a sworde, and all other tokens of promocyon, and
dygnitie: beyng wheresoever he went so terrible, that
he was not onely vnapproched vnto of any man, but
also, ys anye by to dayne chancie happened to meete
him, they woulde turne theyz faces from hym. And
what way so euer he made hys Journeye, he had cer-
taine Uslers going before him, whiche comaunded
euerye man to auopde the Stretes, and no man to be so
hardye, as to beholde hym, but to turne awaie theyz
eyes, and loke vpon the earthe. The whiche when Se-
uerus knew, hym selfe tolde it not paciently; but grude-

ged

ged greatlye therat, so that he diminished muche of
Plautianus auctoritie, and endeuored to perswade
hym, to abate somewhat, at the least wise, of his so in-
solent arrogancy. But Plautian being therof impa-
cient, doubted not to compasse by conspiracy, & Tre-
asore, chempyre selfe: and therfore ymagine thyd dryft.
There was a certayne Tribune named Saturnin, Satur-
whiche chiesly reuerenced Plautianus, and albeit all ninus,
other did so likewise, yet dyd he more and more crepe
into his fauoure, by a greater token and apparaunce
of honouryng hym. Thys man Plautianus reckened
to be hys most trusy and faythfull frende, and suche,
as onely woulde kepe secrete, and close, hys counsell,
and erecture, what so euer he shold comaunde him.
And therfore sent for him in the eueninge, and having
remoued al other aparte, sayd these wordes vnto him.
Nowe is (y he) the time come, wherein thou muste The Tre-
make perfect, thy loue, & obaysance towardes me (of son of
the whiche thou haste hytherunto shewed euidente Plautia-
proffe) and wherin I may suffycyently recopence thy nus.
desertes. The choyle is gyuen vnto the, whiche thou
wylt eschew my daunger, whom thou now seest, and
become vassallie vnto my power, or ellis oute of hande
perish, w the worthy punishment of a stubburne stro-
make. Feare thou not the greatness of the enterpryse,
neither dismay thy selfe wth the names of the perors.
It is lawful for the, to go alone into the Chaumbers,
where they slepe, & as if y diddest returne to the night
watche, thou maist easly without any interruptiō
atchein what thou desyreste. There is nothinge elles
wherin thou shouldest longer awayt for my comau-
dement. To thy way now into the courte as thoughe
thou haddest some priyue & weighty message of mine
to do, and there, as becommeth a valiant man, mur-
dre that olde manne and Boy, wthyn eyther of theyz
Chaumbers. And as thou arte partaker of the daun-
ger, euyn so, after it is eanded, thou shalt enjoy parte
of the greatest honoures. These woordes albeit they
somewhat as dynged the Trybunes mynde, yet dyd
they not vitterlye confounde and expell hys counsell.

The Historie of Herodian.

But as a man of a prompte and readye wytte (for he was a Syrian borne, and for the most part, thenha-bytauntes of the Dryent are of exace and sharpe indgements) perceyuyng the frantike folye, and mere madnes, of Plautianus, and knowynge also what he was able to do, durst not reprehende any thynge that was spoken, leasse hym selfe shoulde furthewyth be slayne. But saynyng that all he hadde hearde, was acceptable unto hym, syrle he saluted Plautianus as Emperoure, and then requyred a lybell of hys hande concerningye the commaundemente of the sayd murdre. For it was the usage of Tyrtauntes, when they hadde wþhoutte lawfull iudgement, commaunded anye manne to be put vnto deathe, to gyue the charge therof, wþþeten in some lytell boke, leaste thers shoulde no argumente, or proofo, remayne of the same appoyntmente. Wþþ that Plautianus, blynded wþþ ouer muche couetyse, deluyered vnto the Trybune a boke, and sente hym towardes the murdre, wþþlyng hym that assoone as he had slayne boþe the Princes, before the facie were publyshed, he shoulde sende for hym, to the entents he myghte be sene wþthin themperval Palayce, before any man hearde of hys possessyon of thempyre. Upon thys conuante the Trybune departed from Plautianus, and as he was wþnt, passed seelwe throughe all the Courte: where, ponderynge wþþ hym selfe and perceyuyng howe knaþye it were for one manne to murdre the twos Princes, lyng in sundry Chambers, he syrle wente to Seuerus lodgyng, and therewylled certayne of hys prouye Chaumber, to helpe hym to the speache of the Emperoure, sayinge that he broughte newes, whiche appertayned to the Emperours sauergarde. They made spadye relacyon thereof vnto Seuerus, who furthwyth commaunded the Trybune to be let in. And he beyng entered

The before the Emperoure sayde these wordes. I am Treason come hyþter (þ Emperoure, qþ he) as he that sente disclosed, me syrmely supposeth to murdre youre persone,

But

The thirde boke.

Fo. xlvi.

But as I my selfe boþe, wþþshe, and wþll, to be the aucthoure of a greate benefyte and the preseruacyon of youre healethe. Plautianus lyng in awaþe wþþ Treason for thempyre, hath appoynted me to murdre boþe you, and youre Sonne. And that not onelye in wordes, but in wþþtyng also, the Tressimonye whereof is thys boke. And in dede, I promisid hym to accomplayshe that he commaunded, leaste yf I reected it, an other woulde haue taken it in hande. But nowe I am here presente, to bewraye the matter vnto you, leasse hys presumptuouse Trecherye, shoulde oppresse you onwares.

þotwylstandyng, that the Trybune spake these wordes wþþ aboundinge of teares, yet dyd not Seuerus at the syrle credyte it, so muche was the memorye of Plautianus loue towardes hym, syred, as yet in hys breste: þea, he suspected all the matter too be contrayued of a purpose, thynkyng that hys Sonne, who abhorred Plautianus, and detested hys daughter, had Imagyned thys craftye Couyne, and mortall slauder agaynst hym. Wheresoþe, hauynge called hys Sonne vnto hym, he beganne to rebuke hym, for that he hadde deuyled suche myschyfe agaynst hys frende, and well wylle. But Antonyne at the syrle, sware, and protestid, that he was ygnoraunte of all thys busynesse, and afterwardes encouraged the Trybune (whoo persyssed in hys tale, and shewed furthe the booke) to declare the hole Treason. Than the Trybune (perceyuyng intoþ howe greate daungere he was entered, not ygnoraunte howe muche in fauoure Plautianus was wþþ Seuerus, and knwynge þrecyfelye, that yf the Treason laye hidden, and the matter not througheþ proued, him selfe shoulde receyue certeame and cruell deathe,) spake thus vnto them. My Soueraigne Lordes (þ he) what more ample argumente or perfecte proofo do you seke hereof? permitt me that I maye go furthe of the Courte, and

þ. iii.

The Historie of Herodian.

and by some secrete and trusty person certisye. Plautianus, that all his commaūdement is fulfilled. He be leuyng it, wilbe here out of hande, to occupie the Pa- laice as boide. The shal it be your partes, to examine, and trye oute the truth. And after he had thus muche spoken, he chose a faythfull, and trusty persone unto hym, whiche shold in his name exhorte Plautianus, to make halle and come furthwith to the Coorte, le- yng bothe the Princes were slayne: for it behoued hym, before the deade were pablyshed amonges the people, to be within the Palacie: that ther by, occupy- enge the Principall Tower, and establyshenge them- pyre unto hym selfe, all men should maugre their hat- tes obey hym as one not entringe into thempyre, but as already possesse therof. Plautianus crediting this matter, was puffed with a meruailouse presumption and hope. And putting on hym a shyzte of mayle for the sure defensice of hys bodye, aboute the euenyng of the same daye ascended into hys Chariotte, and made halle towardes the Coorte with a fewe whyche were present attending vpon hym, who thoughte he hadde bene sente for by the Emperours, about some earnest and weighty busynesse. And when he was wythoute let of any manne, entered into the Palayce, the por- ters beyng ignorant, what the matter mente) the Trybune mette hym, saluted hym as Emperoure by collusyon of purpase imagined, toke hym by the had, and ledde hym into the Chamber, where he seynged that bothe the dead Emperours Corples laye. Howe hadde Seuerus appoynted certayne of hys Garde to laye handes vpon hym, as soone as he were commen in. But when Plautianus, hauinge at that instaunte other falsyes in his heade, was entred into the Cham- ber, sawe the two Emperours there standynge, and perceyued hym seise apprecheded, beryng wytch that so greate a matter, very loxe agasse, he began humbly to entreate, and desyre pardon, affyrminge that all thys dryste was forged vniustly, of malice against him. The Seuerus reprooued hym, rehersyng the manye folde benefites, and honors, he had bestowed on hym.

210

The thyrde booke.

Fol. xlii.

And Plautianus replyed agayne, repetynge the testimonies of hys accustomed truthe, and good wyll to wardes chempesour: wherwith Seuerus began somwhat to relente, and credite the wordes of Plautianus: bntyll that the shyrte of maple appeared throughe a slyt of his upper garment. Whiche Antonyne perceiuing being a sterne, and fierse yonge man, and thereto forz detesting Plautianus, saied. I wold gladli wete (þe) what answere thou wylte make vnto thiese two pointes. Why camelst thou in the euening, vnto them perours vnsent forz? And what meaneth this sherte of mayle thou wearest: forz who commieth in armure to a supper or banquette? And hauninge so sayde, he commaunded the Tribune, and those that were present to stabbe hym in with their swordes, and daggers, as a manyfelle Traitsour, and open enemye. And thei ma-<sup>The punc-
nyhemete</sup> kinge no delaye in the mater, executed Chempesour's anus. sso. And therewithal hee was slaine, and shewinge hys bo-
dy into the highe waye, to be spurned at, & skorned of the people. This iuste ende of lyfe had Plautianus, a man of insatiable auarice. After this done, Seuerus constituted two Capitaynes ouer the men of armes, and hym selfe mosse commenly soiourned in the Suburbes, or elles nyghe the Sea costes of Camparia, sitting in iudgement, vpon maters of controuersy in the lawe. And beynge very diligent in Civile affayres, chiefly coueyted to haue his childeorne traded at Rome with decente, & honest maners. For he perceiued that theyr myndes were bente vnto playes, and shewes, more behementlye, then became thestate of Princes. Wherby it wold come to passe, that the yōge mes studiis, & cōtencions, tending to diuerse purposes, their willes also, and appetites woulde become dysagreable, whē (as it were) certaine brondes of debate, shold be kindled betwene them. But especially Antonyne, after the death of Plautianus, were d̄ terrible vnto al men. Besides that, he compassed wth all the crafte, & ymaginacions, he could devise, how he myght destroy the daughter of Plautianus, hys owne wif. But Seuerus sent her with her lytle Sonne, whiche he had

20

The Historie of Herodian

had by Antonine, into Sicilia, with as much richeſſe, as abundantly ſufficed, for her meate, and drincke, & other neceſſaries: Enſuyng in that point, Auguft, who entreated after the ſame ſort, the ſonnes of Antonius, after he was adiudged a Traitor. Seuerus endeououred in all that he coulde, to reduce hys ſonnes to loue, and concorde, and to reconcyle eyther to other, admonything them, with auncient Hilpoies, and examples, wherin many calamytes, rife thughe diſcoide of Bzetherne, wer rehersed. He added therun to the Treasure him ſelue hadde gathered togither, all the Temples filled with money, and the richeſſe, whiche encreaſed daylye of foſreyne Tributes, howe the Souldiours, might throughe that abundance, be retayned with ample, and riche gypſes, and how the mē of armes in the Cittie, were augmented fourre times, more the theſt were before, and ſo greate an armee, ſouzned nyghe the Cittie, that no foſreyne power (þt a man conſidered the ſelue multitude, or the greatenes of their bodies, or elles the abundance of money) could be founde comparable unto them. But all thieſt thin-
ges, he ſayed, wolde be of none effecte, whiles the two brethren dysagreed & kepte ciuell warre within them ſelues. With rehersall hereof, and entermedlyng cor-
rections with praier, he laboured, to repreſſe their in-
ſolent couraſes, and to bringe them to an atonement, and concorde. But all was in vaine, for thei had throu-
wen the bzydclies out of theyz mouthes, beynge con-
tinually enclyned to the worse. And althoſh the yōge
men, throughe the feruencie of their youth, and immo-
deſte lycence, were ſtirred too much alreadye, unto
delytes of ſundrye voluptuouſe luſtes, yet were therou-
er redi at their elbowes, flockes of parasites, which
allured them unto diuerſe, & contrary diſpoſicions: not
only extolling their diſſolute vices, but alſo inuicting
newe pleasures, wherwith the one myght be pleased,
and the other offend. Of the which parasites, Seue-
rus hym ſelue, apprehended many, in the verye myn-
ter of theyz flatterye, and therfore dyd put them to
death. As the olde man was thus in mynde moleſſed,

þt

The thyrd booke.

Fol. xlivii.

þt the ſenſuall, and vnhoneste lyſe, and delytes of hys ſonnes, he receyued letters from hys lyueternaunte of Englande, wherby he was enformed, how the barbaroule people rebelled, and wasted thole Re-
gion with inuasions, and Commocions. Wherefore, he neadeſſed a greater puylauſce of men, to reſiſt, and Commo-
ſuppreſſe them: there wanted the Emperours preſeſt cion and alſo. Glad was Seuerus hereof: for beynge a man of mutinein
his owne nature, greadie of renoune, after his byc- England
toies, in thoziente, and Septentcentrion, and his ſur-
names þt ſame obtained, he coueyted to make ſome Conqueſt, ouer the Englyſhemen. And to lede hys ſones, fourthe of the Cittie, that being farre from the pleauures therof, thei might accuſtome them ſelues, to warlike, and ſober dyet. Wherefore, he proclaimed his expediſion into Britayne, beynge very olde, and ſore troubled with the goute, but yet of ſo valiaunte a ſto-
make, as neuer was any yonge man. In hys iorney, he roade mooft communely in a horſe litter, neuer reſting longe in any place. When he had ended his voy-
age, and paſſed the Ocean Sea, with as muſhe celeri-
tye as can be thought, he entred into Britaine, muſſered his Souldiours, hauing gathered a woderfull
power togithers, and prepares hym ſelue to batayle.
The Britons, beynge aſtonied, and agaſte þt hys ſo ſodeine arriuall, of thempersur. And hearinge that ſo huge, an hofl was assembled againſt them, let Ambaſſadores unto him, to purge their miſdemeanours, & entreat for peace. But Seuerus, makinge delates of purpose, leſt he ſhuld retoerne to Rome, wout ani thi-
done, & being very desyrouſ of þt Conqueſt, & ſurname of Britaine, diſmiffed the Ambaſſadores home againe, wout any reſolute anſweſe, geue to their ſuite. Hym ſelue, with circumſpecte industrie prepared all thin-
ges expediente unto the warre. And his chieſt care,
was to buylde bridges ouer, and in the marishes, to thentente hys Souldiours myghte ſtande and fyghte England
In safetyp. For manye places in Britaine, are full of full of
watery marishes, throughe the often flowinge o- marishes
uer, of the Ocean Sea. By thole marishes dyd the Thocea.

p.g.

Britons

The thyrde booke.

age, so that he was constrained to kepe his Chambres, and sende Antonine vnto the warres, there to execute chempverours offyce. But Antonine, not regardyng any busynesse of the Brytons, endeououred by all the meanes he could, to winne, and confyrm the heartes of the Souldours vnto hym, depraupinge often tymes his brother, to thentente they shold onely obey, and avde hym, to the attaynyng of the Soueraigntye. The longe maladye of hys father, and the slowe procrasynacyon of hys death, caused the yonge man to be verye pensyfe, and doubtfull, so that he laboured to perswade hys fathars Phisicians, and mynysters to rydde in anye case, wþt all celerytþe possyble, the of Seuerolde man oute of the wþrld: vntyll that Seuerus, being rather throughe thoughte, then syckenes, consumed, eanded hys lyfe: who was the moste famouse of all Emperours in warlyke assayres. For none other had obtayned so manye vctoryes, and Conqueress, as hys vctoryes. Eþther Cyuile agaynste hys aduersaries, or forreyne agaynste the Barbarous nacyons. Thus deceased he, after he had gouerned themþre the space of. xviij. yeþres, leauyng hys Sonnes for hys succellours in the same: vnto whom he leste also so greate aboundaunce of riches, as none of his predecessoris had before him done, and a greater army, then anye forreyne power was able to relyste. When Anthonyne had ones gotten the Supreame auctoritþe, he began to destroye every man from the verie bedde syde, as the prouerbe sayth. For he put to deþ the Phisicians, because they obeyed not hys commaundemente, in hastyng hys fathars deaþe. And slewe all hys owne, and broþers, and enstructers, for that they wente about to reconcyle theym, leauyng throughe hys crneltye, none a lyue, that was eyther in dynasty, or had reuerenced hys father. The Chyueraynes of charmye, he entyced, to perswade the Souldours, to proclayme hym onely Emperoure: ymagynyng daylye many folde myschyfes agaynste hys brother. But he could not wyn the Souldours good wþlles, or assent therunto. For they remembred that Seuerus brought eyther

P. iii. ther

The Historie of Herodian

The as: Brytons swymme and skyrmyshe therin wþt theyz eyente & enemyses, beyng couered wþt water vnto the naþolde maþuell, and not muche caring, that men se the þrtþy partners of tes of theyz naked bodyes. Neþher dyd they knowe Englysh the vse of apparaile, but accustomed to compasse their belyes and neckes onely wþt Iron, wþtch they esteemed an ornament, and token of richesse, as other barbarous people supposid golde. They paynte theyz bodies, wþt dyuerse pycutures, and fourmes of beastes, and therefore weare no garmente, leaſt the paynting shoulde be hydden, beyng a nacion verye valiaunte, and warlyke, gredys of slaughter, and contente onely wþt a small target, a speare, and a skeyne hangynge by theyz naked sydes, ignoraunte vterlye of thuse of shyzes of mayle, and helmettes: for they reckened the same cumbersome vnto them, wher they shold swim ouer the lakes, throughe whose vapours and heate, the ayre is there always myste and darke. Seuerus omitted noþyng vndone, that myghte awyple the Romaine Souldours, and endomage the Brytons. And when all thynges were prepared, as hym selfe wþshed, he leste hys yonger Sonne named Geta, in a parte of the Isle, wþtch he was subiecte vnto the Romaines, to se to the iudgements of matters in law, & thad mystracyon of Cyuile assayres: vnto whom he appoynted as Counsellours, certaine of hys frendes, beyng graue Personages. And hym selfe toke Anthonyne in hys compayne agaynste the Brytons. After the Romayne armie was passed the Riuers, and Bulwarkes (wþtch beyng buylded ouer aneant the Brytons, at that tyme eanded the boundes of the Romayne Empyre) there were foughten manye lyghte skyrmishes, wherof at al tymes the Romaines were vctours. But the flyghte from them was easye vnto the Barbarous: for they hidd them selues in woodes, lakes, and other secrete corners, wherwith they were throughe acqaynted. All the wþtch beyng contrarpous vnto the Romaynes, caused muche delay in the warre. In the meane season, a greuouse disease came vpon Seuerus, beyng soze appaled wþt age,

Geta.

The sick
nesse of
Seuerus.

The historie of Herodian

ther of them vp from theyz insancie, wþtþ equall dilig-
gence, & them selues had euer shewed lyke honoure &
obedyence to them both. Wherfore Antonine, percei-
uyng that he coulde not speade of hys purpose wþtþ
charmye, hauyng taken truce wþtþ the Bþtaynes,
graunted them peace, and received theyz hostages, he
remoued wþtþ great sped to wardes hys Woother &
Brother. Wher the two Bþtaynes met togither, theyz
Woother laboured to bþyng them to agrement, wher-
in also, many of the moste prudente, and sage of Se-
uerus frendes, and Counsailors, earnestly traauised.
Antonyne thereby (seyng all men repyned hys sensu-
alytie) was enduced, rather of force, then good wyll,
to counterfaite loue. After whych done, the two Bþtay-
nes, gouernyng themþre wþtþ equall honoure,
and Soueraignyce, launched oute of Bþtayne, and
sayled wþtþ the Kelyques of theyz father, towardes
Rome. For when they had burned the bodye, they ca-
ried the ashes, intermedled wþtþ certayne pleasant
odours, in a bore of Alabastre to Rome, that it might
be there enteared, & enclosed amonges the sacred mo-
numentes of other Pþinces. Them selues ledde

thus theyz armie, as Conqueroures of
Bþtayne, and passed ouer Thocean,
onto the next coaste of Fraunce.

After what sorte therefore,

Seuerus deceased, and
hewe hys Sonnes
ooke vppon

themyne, it is in thyse
presente booke at
lengthe de-
clared.

(s)

C The ende of the
thyzde booke
of Herod-
yan.

C The

The Argumente of the fourthe Booke of He- rodian.



He fourthe Booke, speaketh of
the pompe, that was at the Co-
nonizacion of Seuerus. The
discoide, and debate, of the two
two Bretherne, and the death
of Geta slaine by his own Bro-
ther Anthonyne, who remay-
ned after sole Emperour, and
was very cruel and vncostant.
After that, of the Treasō, done
by hym to the Alerandriens, and the cause therof. Di-
an other Treason done unto Artabanus the King
of Parthia. And howe Anthonyne hym selfe
was slayne by Martialis one of hys Garde,
and howe Macrinus was made Em-
perour, who sustayned, and helde
on the warre with Artabanus,
and synallye made peace
and concorde with
hym.

(:) (:) (:)
(:) (:) (:)
, , , , ,
(:)

The fourthe booke of Histōrie of Herodian.

Bo. xvi.



He Actes of Seuerus by hys
of. 2000. yeres. are in the former
booke sufficiently shewed. After
whose death, the yonge Em-
perours his sonnes, to their mother,
recourned hastly towarde
Rome: blyng in their toynes con-
tinall rancor, and debate. For
thei never lodged in one place
yn one table: suspecting daily, all theyre mette, and
trynke, lesse eyther of them preventing other, would
souerly in their seruices, warke hys feare wþt pop-
ulacion. And for that caule, thei made the spredier remo-
vnges: thinking to live more safelie within the Cittie,
where thei purposed, to deuide the imperiall palacie be-
twene them, or elles (as thei bothe chieslye wylled) to
lye a funder, in other the largest, & beautifuller hou-
ses of the Cittie. When thei were entered into Rome,
all the people crowned wþt Lawrell, receyued, and
the Senate welcommed them. Formoste rode them-
perours themselves, clothed in Imperiall purple. And
aerite them followed the Consulles, beringe the vellell
wþt Seuerus reliques. Whiche vellell, the people, af-
ter they hadde saluted the newe Emperours, dyd re-
uerentlie worshyp. The Emperours & Consulles be-
yng thus accapanied wþt princely pompe, carpéd
the same into the Temple, where the diuyne monu-
mentes, of Marcus, and other Emperours, are seen.
After they had synyshed the solempne sacrifice, and,
according to the aunciente usage, celebrated the fune-
rall Cerimonies, bothe the Bretherne departed into
the imperiall palacie: whiche thei deuided betwene thei,
closed by all backe doores, and priuary posternes, and
mette togithers onely at the biter gates. They chose be-
lydes, eyther unto hym selfe a sandrye Garde, and ne-
uer came togithers, unles it were some tyme for a ly-
cle whyle to be seen of the people. Neuerthelesse, first

D. 1. of

of all, thei accōplished the due funeralles, of their Faſther. For the Romaines accustome, to coſecrate with: Immortalitee, ſuche Emperours, as at their death, leue eyther Childr̄, or Succellorū, in themypre be- hindē them. And thoſe whiche are endowed with that honour, thei Canoneare amonſte the Goddes. There is throughout the Citye, a certayne dolefull lamenta- tion, myred with ſeaſtfull ioye. And thei vle to enterre the dead Empyre, very ſumptuously, after the comon- lete of men. But then, thei haue an Image, made as lyke the deade Emperour, as may be. The ſame, within the porche, of the Imperiall palayce, thei laye in a great, & highe bedde of Juozie, couered ouer with cloth of golde. And truely, the ſame Image, loketh ver- y pale, lyke vnto a diseased patient. About the bedde on eyther lyde, a great parte of the daye, do certayne persons ſyt. That is to ſeere, on the left ſyde, the Se- nate, clothed in blacke garmentes: And on the right ſyde, many Matrones, whome either their hulbades, or parentes dignitez, do beweify. None of thieſe, are ſeens to weare any owches, or chaunes of golde. But beyng cladde, vñ thinne white vellure, thei ſhewe the countenaunce of mourners. And thus doe thei con- newe the ſpace of. vii. dayes: dureng the whiche, every daye, the Empyora Philicians, doo repayre vnto the Bedde. And, as though thei hadde felte the pacientes pulces, declare that he wareth more ſickē then beſore. Finally, when it ſemeth that he is deceaſed, Certane of the moſte noble, and worthy yonge me, of thordres of knightes, & Senatours, doo take vp the bedde, on their ſhoulders, and carry it throughe the ſtrete called Sacra via, vnto tholde market place, where the Ro- maine magiſtrates, are accustomed to reder by their offiſces. Ther, on both ſides, are certaine ſtages made with ſteppes, vpon the whiche, on thone ſide, is a quert of boyes, beyng noble mens Sonnes, and on thother ſyde, are many beutyfull women, ſinging Hymnes, and valades, in prayre of the dead Emperour, meaſu- red with diuerſe lameſtable verſes. When thone are ſynched, the yonge men do take vp the bedde againe, and bere it out of the citie, into the ſielde called Cam-

pus Martius. In the broadeſt parte wherof, thei ſo- Campon
erected a towre ſoure ſquare, vñ ſides of equal heighe, Martius
buildest of great timber, lyke vnto a Tabernacle. The ſame within furth, is ſilled with dyre chippes, & Ro- des: And on the vitter ſode, haged with armes clotheſ of golde, and decked with monyages of Juozie, and ſun- dyne painted pictures. Within it alſo, is an other leſſe Towre, but lyke in forme, with doooreſ and porcheſ ſpotted. And ouer y the iiii. & fourthe, vñ manye other roumes, aſcending conſequentually, vntil the reache vnto the higheſt, which is leſſe then all the other. A man may copare this buildest, vnto Coures, whiche are ſet in hanes, with fyre on the toppe, to direete hys ſpyles, which ſayle by nyght on the ſeaſ, into their per- fecte portes, and ſure ſtacions. The ſame are comon- ly called Phari. Now whē thei haue put the bedde in Phari, the Deconde Tabernacle, thei gather togyther all kyndes of ſpicerie, and perfumes, vñ diuerſe odoriſe- rous fruites, herbes, & iuyces, the which thei tholde on heapes, in the Tabernacle. Neither iſ ther, any na- tion, Cittie, or person, whiche exelleth in honour, or dignicie, but at y time, vnto the vittermoſt of hys pa- were, honozably celebrete, the laſte funeralle, of the- perſone. When thei haue couched a great heape of ſyl- res together, & ſtuffed y buildest therewith, all the Romaine knightes, do ride about y Towre, vñ a tuffe courſe, to order to ſro, called of the Pſtrichius. Cha Pſtrich ſtottes are alſo drawe about, wherin many do ſit, clo- chius. thered in purple, repreſetyngh perſons, of all noble me, be- ing Magiſtrates, & Capitaines, of Rome. The Cere- monies being throughe ended, the Succellor in them- pyre, taketh a brade of fire in his hande, & breth therid the Tabernacle. After whā, all other ſo are pſet, doo- thowſe fire likewyſe, into the ſame, and immeadi- al y buildest, being filled vñ thone ſieckes, & ſpices, beginneth to burne beheneth. Then out of y higheſt, & leſſe Towre, as out of a hyghe ſteaple, is let ſourthe an Egle, the whiche they beleue, dothe bare the Emper- our ſoule, into heauen. And ſom thence ſourthe is that Emperour worshypped as the other Goddes.

Thistorie of Herodian

The dys. When these twoo yonge menne, had after thys sorte, esode of y consecrated theyz parent, they returned home: in her two bie: they dayly exercysed priuyc grudges, lyng in awaite thren.

one so: an other, and ymagynynge al y meanes, wher-
by they myght entrappre eyther other. I fhalys, they
ompreyed nothyng, wher ewch eyther of them myght
destroy, and defeate other, and aspire to thole Monar-
chye by hym selfe. Wel ydes that, the myndes of all the
noble men, and Cyteyns, whych had anye honoura-
ble offyce, or dygnytie, were seyed into dyuerse fac-
cysions(either of the brethren, sending theyz secrete let-
ters, to allure wþch landz y mōys, manye unto
theyz pruyuate appetyces. The greates parte leaned
vnto Geta, because he shewed a greate token of good-
nes, behaued hym selfe modestly in theyz companyes,
and vþd honest studys. For he retayned commonlye
aboute hym, manye that were well learned, and exer-
cysed hym selfe, in wþskelyng, and other lyke comen-
dable recreacysions. And wþch hys gentle haunours to-
wardes all men, he wanne very manie unto hys fren-
deshyp, and loue, through a certaine pryncypal glory.

Anto- nine
vnto Geta, because he shewed a greate token of good-
nes, behaued hym selfe modestly in theyz companyes,
and vþd honest studys. For he retayned commonlye
aboute hym, manye that were well learned, and exer-
cysed hym selfe, in wþskelyng, and other lyke comen-
dable recreacysions. And wþch hys gentle haunours to-
wardes all men, he wanne very manie unto hys fren-
deshyp, and loue, through a certaine pryncypal glory.

The par the into brotherly concord, and vnitie, it semed best, to
lynge of deuide theyzre betwene the. Wherfore, having called
thempire toghether theyz fathers frendes, they agreed of y same
betwene dyvision. So that all Europe fel vnto Antonines lot,
the twoo & the lande ouer aneansse it, called Asia, was appoin-
brethren ted vnto Geta. Therbi, either of the, as it wer, throug
propon: a certayne dyvine prouidence, shold be seperated to the
tis. Sea of Propontis. And it was concluded, y Antoni-
vnto Bzantinu nes army shold remaine in Bzantinu, and Getas, in
Thalce. Chalcedon a Cittie of Bithinia. The which Citties, bo-
don. ing situate one against y other, shold defend either of
theyz

The fourthe boke.

Fo. xlviij.

theyz limittes, & prohibyte the bothe, from invasions:
As many Senators as were of Europe, shold remain
in Rome, & al the rest attend vpon Geta: who appoin-
ted for the Deates royall of his dominion, Antioch, & Antioch
Alexandrie, bothe Cities of gretnes, not muche inf: Alexan-
droz to Rome. Then of the inhabitautes of y South, vnto
leuing the Mauritanians, & Pumidians, vnto Anto. Maurita-
nine, him selfe toke al y residue, euen vnto the Orien- nians.
Whiles thei debated these matters, al other Pumid
beholding the earthe with sorowfull countenaunce, and
theyz mother Julia, spake as ensueth.

¶ We haue found out my sonnes, & he how to deuide Iuliathe
the land, & Sea betwixt you: and eyther of your bow: si. Empe-
des, ye say, the Pontian sea beth sperate. Buzinoid, roys mo-
hew wil ye deuide your mother: or how shal I haue: ther.
funate creature be departed betwene you: ¶ ypte sea herwo-
ms, and either of you, bury the part, he shall haue, ¶ I des vnto
my selfe may also, wþ the Sea, & land, be dispeured be: them.
ewene you. When she had so sayd, she layd her armes
þpon their neckes, & embracyng them bothe, endeau-
red in al y she could, to reconcile the. ¶ wherfore, being
moued to compassion, they lycenced every man to de-
parte, wþout any finall, or determinate conclusio,
and them selues also, returned home. But their rāco,
and envy, increased daily, ¶ for whē any Capitaines,
& Magistrates, were elected, either of the brethre, ad-
ded his own frende chiesly. ¶ when they late in iud-
gement, they helde euer dyuerse opynions, to the in-
tolerable damage, & losse, of the party, who had y mat-
ter in controvrsye. They ompreyed besides no kynnes
of secrete wyles, and entrappynge, labouryng to
entysle eyther others Cooke, Būlars, and Copbe-
vers, to povson theyz Mayster. ¶ The whiche endeu-
ors, when they proceaded not, as either would, for that
they tooke theyz meate wþch greate watche, and dyli-
gence, Anthonyne beyng impacient of delaye, and
yrycked wþch ambycyon of the hole Campye, deter-
myned eyther to commyte, or suffer, some notable
facynorous facte. And therfore, he compassed the
matter, wþch strengthe, and murder, ¶ for leyning that
¶. iii. hys

The Historic of Herodian.

hys priuy attempts toke none effecte, he thoughte it necessarye, lettynge all hope, and leave aparte, to sy-
nysche his begon enterpise oute of hande. Therfore,
sodeynlye breakyng open hys Wzothers Chaumbre

Geta doze, he molte cruelly there new hym, upon hys Wzoth-
ers lap, wher he thought not of any suche mischier.
hys Bro. The which dede, being accomplished, he immediatly
ther An- lepte furthe, and runnyng through all the palayce,
crysse. cryd, that he hadde wyth greate dysfyculte, escaped
a maruaylouse daunger. And therewynt, he coman-
ded the Souldeours of hys Garde, to safecoudyng
hym furth wyth into the Campe, where he myghte a-
bide in more suretye: sayinge that he shoulde perishe
yl he remained any lengter in the Courte. And they
credyng hys wordes, and beyng ignorant of that
was happened wythin, accompanied hym, as he ran
runnyng also. Thys moued a greate tumulte, amon-
ges the people, whyles the Prynce wente priuylye in
the ryghte, through the myddes of the Cite. Alsoone
as he came into the Campe, he entered into a lytell
Chappell, wherein, the Signes, and Images of the
host, were worshyped: and there fallyng prostrate,
gau thankes wyth bowes, as yf they had beene for
hys healthe. When the same was reported to the
Souldeours, whereof some were washynge, and
some other reposynge theym selues, they ran ther
as men amased, in dyuerse plummepes. And he, com-
myng furthe into the myddes of theym, dyd not at
the fyre, open the matter throughlye, as it was com-
myted, but cryd that he had escaped a maruaylouse
daunger, and Treason, of a malchouse manne, hys
enemye, for so he named hys brother. And that wyth
much dysfyculty, after longe stryke, hys aduersaries
were vanquished. For whyles they both contended,
fynallye, he was by the fauoure of fortune, leste onely
Emperour. But in this darke & ouerthwart inueigh-
yng of these woordes, he wylshed, rather to haue hys
dede understande, then openlye harde. Then for hys
safetys obtainyd, he promysyd vnto euerye Soulde-
oure, twng thoulande, syue hundreth grottes, and he
alowyd

The fourthe boke.

glotted theym halfe as muche more byttayle, as they
were accustomed to haue before that tym. He lys-
tened theym also, to take theym felues, money oute
of the Temples, and Treasourys, lauplyng out
at large. In one daye, as muche as Scirurus had in
twyl. yeares, gathered, and of other mennes calamp-
ters and mysteryes, heaped togþthers. The Soulde-
ours, beyng wyth so greate abundance of mo-
ney entyed, perceyuyng thole circumstaunce of the
aforesayde murde, by thole that were fidele from
the Courte, pronounced hym sole Emperour, and
declared Geta a Traytor. Antonyne remayned the
same ryghte in the Temple, and as savinge hym selfe,
in the rewardes, wherewith he had wonne the Soul-
deours heartes, wente the nexte daye into the Se-
nate house, beyng enuyoned wyth all the armes,
and moze armure and weapons, then were accusto-
med to garde the Prynce, beyng entered into the
Senate, he made hys sacryfyc, and that eanded, he
ascended thimperyal Throne, and made an Oacy-
on, as foloweth.

¶ I am not ignorant that every murde of a man. The oza-
nes owne kynde, as soone as it entreth into the cyon of
eares of others, wyll seame odysse, and the name Anto-
nyne it self, when it is heard, wil adde a maruaylous sciau nyne.
For compasid foloweth vnto reme, and en-
uy pursueth the mighty. The vanquished is thought
to receyue iniurie, and the Conquerour is supposed
to committ wrotinge. But if any man wyll ponder the
matter it selfe, rather with attentise Counsell, then
any percial fauoure towardes hym that is dead, and
exactly consider hys cause and entente, he shal easly
synd that it is both iust and requisite, to tenenge, ra-
ther then to receive iniurie. For the infame of tyme
morumenes, doth ensue the calamity of the murdeyd,
but the ouercommer, besydes that he is in safetys,
doþe also beare awaie the tenowne of foytitude.
Now al other thinges the whiche he entended against
me, wyth poysone, and al other kinde of Treason, it
lyeth in youre handes, to welle oute by tormentes.
¶.iii. Therefore

The Historie of Herodian.

Therefore perdyre, haue I commaunded all hys seruauntes to be here presence, that you may knowe made the trueth. There be many of them already rackt, whose confession ye maye thoroughly heare. Finally, whyles I was wryth my Moother, he came vpon me, bringing in his company, many armed wryapys. But I knowe the matter before, reueged my self on mine enemy. For he neither haue any minde, nor per purp-
sessed anye thyng, per tayninge to a brother. And to de-
stroy him, the which doth stell entede mischies, eue as
it is rightfull, so is it also receaved in hys. For Nomin-
lus hym selfe, the bulder of this Cite, forbare not
his brother, which deluded hys wrokis of so greate
importaunce. I onyghte Germanicus the brother of
Nero, and Lycus the brother of Domitian. Marcus
the philosopher, did not suffre y checkes of his Son
in lawe. But I, in thauoyding of povson prepared
against me, and the swoorde that hengt ouer my shol-
ders, haue slayne myne enemye: for that name, bathe
he, throughe his deades deserued. Render you thankes
vnto the Goddes, for that they haue preserued one
Prince vnto you. And let not your myndes, be seuer-
ed into sondry opnions, but obeyenge youre onely
Emperour, lede your lyues hereafter in tranquilltie.
For Jupiter, eue as he posseseth, the onely Empire,
and dominion, amonges the Goddes, so hathe he ap-
pointed, the same vnto one alone, amonges mortall
men. After he had spoken thiese woodes, wryth loude
voce, full of yre, and cruell countenaunce, beholding
the frendes of Geta, whiche trembled, and wares
pale throughe feare, he retourned into the palacie.
Furthewirth then, were the alyes, and frendes, of Ge-
ta, put to death, euen thole, which dwelt in the house,
wyth hym, and all his seruauntes, so that the age of
infantes, was not spared. Bysydes that, the deade
karkalles, were layde in Cartes, for a reproche, cast
ed oute of the Cite, & there thowen on heapes, and
burned. Neþher suffered he to remayne alwyue, an-
one, which was but of lytle acquayntaunce with Ge-
ta. The wryslars, Carters, and Stage players, and
synallye

Xonul⁹.The ex-
treme
Crueltie
of Anco-
nine.

The fourthe booke]

Quallye alkynde of thyng, that was yþter gracie-
full or acceptable, to the eyes, or eares of Geta, were
euerie where destroyed. And euerie Denatur, that
excelled in nobilitie, signifie, or ryches, was putte to
deathe, as his frendes vnto euerie male triste: yea som
tyme, without any cause, vpon every lyght accusacio-
n. He caused to be slayne also the syster of Commodus,
beinge bryde aged, and thitherunto of all Empe-
rors: entayned with great reverence, as it became
the daughter of Marcus: takynge for occasion, that
she had bewayled vnto hys moother, the death of Ge-
ta, and with her his owne wife the daughter of Plan-
tianus, whiche before was sente into Cisilia, and a
kynman of hys owne named, Seuerus, the sonne of
Pertinax, and Lucilla the syster of Commodus.
Finally, he roted out, as it were from the batom, eue-
rye one, whiche remained of the imperial blonde, or in
the Senate, of the nobilitie. He commaunded also, all
the rulers, and officers, of the Provinces, to be slain,
as the frendes of Geta: so that all the ryghtes, were
spent in murdarynge, a myracious number of men.
Yea, he buried quiche in the yearthe, the Westall vir. The be-
gines, as thoughis they had violated their virginitie. Westall vir.
Finally, that whiche never before was done, he com-
mitted. For whiles he was lokynge vpon the playes:
called Circenses, the people of Rome, repayninge, I Circenses,
knowe not howe, a certayne Carter, whome he at-
tentlye behelde, he takynge it for an obloquie towar-
des hymselfe, furthwyth commaunded the whole ar-
me, to runne vpon the people, and to spople, and slay
euerie one, that had spoken agaynst the Carter. And
the seuldours, hauing once gotten licence of riding,
and rabyng when they (whiche had spoken agaynst
the Carter, coulde not be ayserned amonges the peo-
ple, for no man woulde in that multitude, confesse
the trueth) as they happened vpon anyeman, either
newe hym, or elles, takynge them all captives, after
they rausome payed, dyd with great difficultie re-
lease them. When thiese thynges were finisched,
The Emperour syzed with remorse of hys evyl actes,
and

The Historie of Herodian

and detesting the livinge in the Citye, remoched from Rome, to set the Souldoys in order, and bisypte the provinces. After he was passed Italye, he wente unto the bankes of Danowhe, the which are subiecte to the Romayne Empyre. There, wher he exercysed his bodye in Cartinge, or huncyng all kynde of wyld beastes, or elles, late in iudgement: but that was very sealdome, after he had harde brytle of the matter. He there besydes, ioyned all the Germaynes into hys societie: so that of them, he elected every mosse haluaunte, & goodly of stature, for his companyons in warre, and garde of his persone. And oftentymes, layenge a syde the Romayne apparaile, he put on the Germanien garmet, and was sondry tymes seene in theyz Tassockes, embrodred with golde. He ware besydes on his head, a velowe bushe of here, rounded after the Germanouse, loured him exceedingly. The Romayne Souldoys also reioyled therat, because he gaue unto them sondry bounties fulfystes. Hym selfe exercysed all the offices, of a priuate Souldour. For if there were any trencher to dyppe, hym selfe syssle dygged, anye brydge to be made ouer a ryuer, any bulwarke to be buylded, or anye other handye worke, or labour, to be taken in hande, hym selfe syssle enterpryzed the same: contyned alwaye with thynne fare, in cuppes, and dysches of woodde, eatynge continually course bredd. For he accurstis of stomed, to feade him selfe with a Cake of Rye, the whiche he grounde, and baked bypon the coles, wyth hys owne handes. Fynally, he reiected all wanton pleasures, and bled sympyle thinges, appertayninge unto the pooreste common Souldoys. Besydes that, he had rather be called Companion, then Prince. And used to trauayle mosse commonlye on hys feete, as the Souldoys dyd, seldome ryding on horse, or in chariote, and alway bering his owne harneisse. Vea many times, he of Anto- heuply laden with pictures of golde, and scarcely light nyne. ynough, for the stongest Souldoys. For thiese, and other

The southe booke.

Fol. li.

ther semblable thinges, did hys army loue hym, as a warrelyke personage, and maruayle at hym, as a baysant Capitaine. For it seemed a miracle unto them, that a man of so lytle stature, was able to endure so greate labours. Wher he had establisched some Souldoys at Danowhe, and passed into Thracie, which boundeth vpon the Macedonyens, furthwith he became another Alexander. For he renewed the memorie of the same kyng, by all the meeres he coulde deuyse: com- mounding his vimages to be erected, in every towne, and reperuallyinge Romme selfe, the Capitole, and all Capitols the Temples, with the statuеs of Alexander. And then sawe many vimages sooully wroughte, that bare in one body two faces, of Alexander, and Antonyne: who weare abroade, in the Macedonyen apparaile, weareing a diademe on his heads, and slippers on his feate. He named a chosen company of yonge men, the Macedonien Phalanix: commaundinge his Capitaines, to take unto them, the names of Alexanders Chieftaines. And the yonge me, which he had sent for out of Sparta, he called y Laconike, & Pitanyte Ceterie. Wher he Pitaniere had ended thiese thinges, fordered euerie Ceterie, as he myght, he made a retage vnto Bergam, a Cittie of A Bergamia, w he myght vse some of Asculapius phisicks. And musing, wher he was ther arrived, after he had recreated hi selfe w sufficer sleape, he remoched to Troye, visted all the Troye olde monumenteres of the Cittie, & wente unto Achilles Tombe. And hauyng sumptuously decked the same, w flowres, & Garlades, he began of newe to counterfayte Achylles. But as he wylched, for some one lyke unto Patroclus, his dearest fyghtine named Festus, whiles he soiorned at Troye, deceased: dispatched, as some thought, w poiss, y he myght be buried as Patroclus was: but as other affirme, evynke w sicknes. His Patrobody, did Antonine comauyse to be brought fourthe, & clus. y place wher it shuld be burned, to be piled wth much woodde. And putting the corps, into y middes therof, & sacrificyng diuerle kindes of beastes, he threlo fire into it, & holding a glasse in his hande, dranke of the wynne therin, makynge petition vnto the wyndes. And

v. y.

The Historie of Herodian

And beinge somewhat halde, whē he sought for heare, to laye into the fyre, it became a sporke, vnto all that were present: yet at the last, he notred of thole heares he had. Chiesly amonges al valiaunt men, he praised Sylla the Romain, and Hannibal the Aphyricano, whose Image he also erected. After he was departed from Troye, he passed ouer all Alys, Bythynye, and the other adiacente countreyes. And hauinge set ouer in hys effaeres, euerye where, he wet vnto Antioche, where he was receyued verye honorably, and taryed a little while. From thence he remoued to Alerandry, clokyng this voyage, with pretence of desyre, to see the Cittie, buylded by Alexander, and to consulte with the God of that countrey, whome the inhabitauntes do greatly worship. Faining these two causes, he comaunded first auulters, for sacrifice to be erected, with all kinde of funeral celebration, to the honour of their God, and the memorie of Alexander. When this was declared vnto the Alerandryen multitude, beinge naturally chaungeable, with euerye trifle, they al togerher, as it were men distracte of theyz wyttes, reioyced at the prynces wyll, and beneuolence. And prepared them selues, to receaue hym more honorably, then euer they dyd any other Emperoure. For all kynde of musicall instrumentes, mette hym in his passage, making a wonderfull melodious sowne. Besides that, al the gates, and stretes, being replenisched with the flauour of splices, and perfumes, they welcomed hym with bonefyres, & strowing of floures in hys waye. After his entrie into the Cittie, he syssit bysyted the Temples, & when he had there offred many sacrifices, and heaped the auulters with franken-sence, he went vnto the Tombe of Alexander, wher he put of his owne robe of purple, hys rynges adornd with precious stones, his gyrdle, & all his other goodly ornamentes, and layed the same vpon the Tombe. The Alerandriens beholding al these thinges, reioyced wonderfulllye, and made fest, bothe nyght, and daye, hydde in the Emperours canarde stowacke.

Fox

The fourthe booke

Fol. lli.

For these thinges did he, throughe subtyltye, so shent, he might slea, all the multitude togithers. The cause of his priuey indignacio, and grudge, was this. It was reported vnto hym at Rome, that whyleas hys father lyued, and after his death, the Alerandriens, had blotted out many opprobrioule wordes against him. For in deade, thei are of nature, talkatyng people, fashyoned to mocke, and scoyne, all others, babelynge against every noble man, and chyestly wyth quyppes, and tauntes, as them selfes thinke, pleiaunt, & were but those, by whō thei are spoken, accompte them verie odious, & bitter. For of suche scoffes, those, wherid bycye is reproued, doo souest hysre anger. Wherefore when they had spoken many thinges agaynste Antonyne, not kepyng in sylence, the murder of hys Brother, commonly callyng his Mother Jocasta, & scorning him, because that beynge of so lytle stature, he Jocasta. woulde seame to counterfaite Alexander, and Achilles, whiche were moste valiaunte, and mighty Capitanes, thei so encensed hym, beynge alreadye of hys owne nature, yrons, and bloodthirlye, that he fullye determined, their death, and destrucciō. When he had therefore fynished this laste rehersed solemnnitie, and seaste, sayng so great a multitude of the next nations, resorting vnto the Cittie, he comaunded by proclamacion, that all the Alerandryen youthe, shuld assemble into a certayne syelde, without the walles: promysinge, that as he had of the Macedonyen, and Sparayne yonge men, euen so wold he of them, constitute a square battell, called Phalaur, in the honoure, and remembraunce, of Alexander. When thei were so assembled, he comaunded them, to seperate themselves in bandes, a greate space one from an other, that he myghte electe oute of them, the ayestle ages, statures, and personages, for the warres. The yonge men credyng the same, and perswaded wyth a coloure of truthe, throughe the greate honoure, he had before shewed towardes theyz deade Prince, resorted thirthe in many compaynes, bringinge wyth them, their parenes and Bretherne, with 10 youse acclamacioes & shoutes.

P. 19.

The ii.

The occation of Antonines hate red against the Alerandriens.

The historie of Herodian

Then Antonine went aboute the compaunce, bewising them, and praisinge this and that, in euerie one as he liked, until his whole host had compassed them unwarres, and looking for no such thinge. And when he perceaved them al to be enclosed with his armie, & entangled, as it were with nettes, him selfe came furth with his garde, and gaue a watche word unto the Souldours: who furthwith ran upon the people, and slewe with meruaylous slaughter, the naked, and unarm'd youth, & al other that wer present. Of the Souldours, some were occupied in murdereing onely, other some buried the deade corpses, in huge pittes, & coueringe them with earth againe rased a meruaylous highe hil: Many were drawen half dead into y pittes, & many were buried quicke. There perished besides very many of the Souldours them selfes. For they, whiche had any breath remaining, and not fully lost theyr natural strength, clipping the Souldours, which ranne upon them, drewe the same also, into the pittes wth them. And there was so great a murdre committed, that wth streames of bloud, which ranne alonge the playnes, not onely the mouthe of Nylus, but also the Sea by the Cittie, became red of colour. Thys eanded, Antoinye affecting the Parthyane surname, and rounyme of Thoriental conquest, (although the people were nowe in perfecte peace) inuincit this craste. He wrate letters unto Artabanus king of Parthia, and sent unto him Ambassadours, wth sondrie sumptuous giftes. In those letters he wrate, that he wold take to wife the kinges daughter, for y him self was a prince, and a princes sonne. And therfore it besemed not hys estate, to become son in law, of any priuate or meane persone, but rather to mary a Queen, or the daughter of a great and puissant king. He alledged, that the Empires of Rome, and Parthia, being the st. mightiest of the world, shoulde by this affinitie ioyne togidhers, and no ryuer disparteynge them, be of so great strenght, that it were impossible, for any forreyne power, to baynquishe them. For quod he, all the Barbarous nations, whiche are nowe subiecte, unto both

The
murder
of the A
lerandri
ens by
treason.

filius.

Letters
sent by
to Artab
anus.

The fourthe booke

Fol. liii.

these Empires, wyl easly contynue in subjection, when euerie of them, shal haue theyr owne rulers, and gouernours. The Romaynes, he affyned, had an armie of fote men, the whiche wth speares, and in playne battayle, excelled all other. And the Parthians had a greate power of horsemen, and experte archers. Wherefore, these chynges ioyned toghers, and agreinge in one, they shoulde (he sayde) easly retayne, vnder one Scepter, and Diademe, the Empire of the whole worlde. The pleasaunce spyces, and synne clothe also, whiche came from thcm, to the Romaynes, and the goodly metall, and all curios wroughte thynges, which were transported from the Romains to them agayne, shoulde not after thys mary age be seldomie caried, as it was wont by marchauntes, but thuse therof, shoulde be in common to them, without let or interruption, in one land, and vnder one gouernour. After the Parthian kunge, had receaued these letters, he syde denied the request, saying, that a barbarous matrimony became not a Romaine. For what concord (quod he) woulde be betwene them, whiche used not one language, nor one kind of living, & appayzel. There were (he sayde) at Rome manye Senatours daughters, amonges whome the Emperoure might chose hym a wyse: as there were, in hys dominion, certayne called Arslide. Neperher was there anye caule, he thoughte, whiche of them, shoulde be alayened from theyr native countrey. Wth thys aynswere, he repulsed the Emperours luyte. But Antoinye, neper leste of sendyng manye gyltes, and promysyng by othes, hys perfecte loue to wardenes hys daughter, vntyll the Barbarous prynce beleyng hys wordes, promysed to geue hym hys daughter to wyse. When the same of thys was spredde, all the Barbarous people prepared themselues to receaue the Romayne Emperoure, reiysyng wth a certayne hope, of contynual peace thereafter.

P. llii.

Then

Arsacide.

The historie of Herodian

Then Antonine, hauing passed without let, or stafe, of anye man, the Riuers, entred into the Parthian Region, and rode throughe the same, as hys owne. And in hys waye, all the people, celebrateth sacryfices burning encense, vpon the decked Aultares, wherwith he sayned hym selfe, to be greatly pleased. After a lige iorney, he approuched at the lasse, nyghe the Palacie of Artabanus: Who met wth him, in a certaine plaine before the Cytte, to receaue hym, as a newe Bryde-grome, and hys Sonne in lawe. And a greate multy-tude of the Barbarouse people, crowned wth theyr countrey floures, and apparayled in garmentes, adorned wth golde, and baryable colours, celebrateth the same, as a feaste, and solempnytye, daunsyng to githers, by the sounde of Pypes, and Tabors. For in those instrumentes, they are aboue measure delyted, especially, when thei are ones wel typled with wine. But when all the multy-tude, were assembled togythers, and hauing leste their horses behinde, and laide asyde their bowes, and arrowes, applyed them selfes to banquetyng, and gatheringe togither in a rude plumppe, stode withoute order, whyles thei suspected no harme, but every man, thursting forwardes, to see the newe marped man, Sodeynly, Antonyne wth a preuy sygne, commannded all hys men, to slea, and destroy the Barbarouse people. They, beyng astonyed with that sodeyne chaunce, turned theyr backes, and fledde from the Romaynes whiche pursued, and wth disceytle. Artabanus hym selfe, beyng socoured, and set vpon a horse, by some of hys Garde, dyd wth greate dyfficultye escape. But the residue of h Parthians were every where ouerthowen, and murdere. For thei neither had their horses, whiche thei most vsed (thei hadde perdy sente theim before to grasse) neyther coulde thei flee: for theyr wyde garmentes, hangyng downe to theyr heales, interrupted theyr runnyng. Thei broughte not besydes theyr bowes, and arrowes, with them, for what neaded that at a Parthiens, and a greate booyce of men, and beastes, taken

The fourthe boke

Fol. llii.

taken captynes, and ledde awaye, Antonyne departeth. And withoute any resystance, burned the towernes, and vllages, geaung lycence vnto his Souldiours, to ransake, and spoyle, all that they woulde, or could. This mischiefe, & calamitie, did the Parthiens, thowtware, receiue. Then Anthonyne, hauing byseted the inwarde partes of Parthia, and his Souldiours beyng weryed, w rappine, and murder, retourned in, to Mesopotamye. From thence, he sygnified vnto the Senate, & people of Rome, that he had subdued Tho- riente, and brought in subiecture, all the men of those Regios. The Senate, (albeit thei before knewe per- fectly the hole circumstaunce, for Princes affayres, can by no meanes, contynew longe, in hugger mug- ger) yet throughe feare, and flaterye, decreed all honours of victorie, vnto hym. After this, Antonine so- tourned in Mesopotamie, gyving hym selfe, to Car- ting, and hunting of wylde bestes. There were two generall Capitaines of his armie, Audentius, & Ma- crinus, of the whiche the one was aged, rude, & blun- Audentius- tyshe, but yet, experie in warfare. And the other, al- us, Ma- way exercysed, in matters of the lawe, and therin ex- erinus, actly learned. This man, the Prince vsed to taunte, & checke openly, as a man nothyng valiaunte, or apt to warre. For hearing that he sedde very delycately, and reected thole syngle, and warlycke meates, whiche Antonyne vsed, and that he ware a gowne, and other decente apparayle, lyke vnto a Cytizen, he reproched hym, as a womanly person, threateninge ostentynnes to kyll hym. Mactynus beyng therof impatient, was stured with meruaylouse anger. Thereunto happe- ned this chaunce: it was perdie expediet, that Antoni- ne, shoulde ones synghe hys lyfe. For beyng of hys owne nature, ouer curiouse, he studayd, not onely, to knowe the priuay affayres of men, but also, to sech- oute, the secretes, of the Goddes, and Dyuels. And throughe continual feare of Treason, consulted with many oracles, and recayned aboute him, diuerse Ma- gietens, Astrologiens, and Soothsayers, omeyting no creature, whiche professed thole fantasies, and pilusi- Q. i. ena.

The historie of Herodian

Paterni
anus.

ons. But suspecting them also, as lyers, and Prophetes of flattery, he accustomed to wryte, vnto one Maternianus in the Citie: vnto whome he had committed, the charge of all hys affayres, and hym amoles all his frindes, he had chosen, for the trustieste, & pertaker, of all his secrete counselles: willing him, to sende for the besse Magiciens, from all partes, and cōsulte with them, of thende of his lyfe, and whether any man, wente aboue by treason, to obtayne thempyre. Maternianus, (having accōplished, his P̄zinc̄es commaundemente (whether the Magiciens tolde hym so, or elles bycause he hated Macrinus, wrote a gayne vnto Antoinye, that Macrinus conspyred Treason against him, and that it was expedyente, to rydde hym oute of the waye. And theise letters sealed with other, as the blage was, he deluyered to Purse-nautes, who were ignozaunt, of that they hadde in hande. The same, (hauyng ended their iorney, with accustomed celerite) came vnto Antoinye, when he prepared hym selfe, to Carteng, and was alredy ascēded his Chariot. Then delivred thei vnto him thole Packquet of Lettres, amonges the which were thei also, that touched Macrinus. But Antoinye, beyng at that tyme fully bente to Carteng, cōmaunded Macrinus, that he shold open, and peruse the Letters, and, ys there were any matter of importaunce, in the contained, make relacion therof, vnto hym agayn. If not, he shold execute, his owne office of P̄zorship. For so at other tymes, he was accustomed, to commanide hym in semblable causes. Hym selfe then departed, towardes hys pastyme. And Macrinus, hauing vntsealed, & seuerally perused, the Letters, hapened on the same, that mocioned his destruction. Then vnderstanding the greate mischief, that henge ouer hys heade, & knowing also Antoinyes wrathe, and outragiouse cruelty, specially, when he shoulde haue suche occasion, he kepte backe, the same Lettre, and of the resse, declared the contentes, vnto Themperour. But yet, fearing leste Maternianus, woulde effsones certeyne the Emperour, of the same matter, he determined, to commynt somme acte fourthwyth,

The fourthe boke

Fol. iv.

rather than in delayeng tyme, hym self shold perissh. And therfore, thus cōcluded. Ther was a certaine Cēeturio named Martialis, one of Antonines priuey chā Marcia, ber, accustomed alwaies, to be next attendant, on his lis. persone: Whose brother, Antonine had put to death, vpo simple accusaciō, wout leful iudgement, & vled of tentymes, to checke Martialis himself, callinge hym cowarde, & cōfederate of Macrinus. This mas sorow for y death of his brother, Macrinus throughly perceiuing, & knowing also, how he was sufficietly syzred to malice by his own reproches, called y same, as one alredy bounde, by his manifolde benefites, vnto him. And perswaded him, y as sone, as he could finde oportunitate, he shold lea Antonine. Martialis, beinge w his promises allured, & throughe his owne grudge, to the reuenge of hys brothers death, already enflamed, promised to accomplish his minde, whē time coueniet shold serue. And truly, it chaunsed shortely after. For Antonine, soiorning at Carre a Citie of Mesapo. Carre tamie, visted y Temple of Diana: y which, being nigh Mesapo, vnto the Citie, is there of the inhabitautes, hadde in camp, great honour, and reuerente. Thither he went, with a few horsemen, leuing the armie behinde him: for after he had finyshed his sacrifice, he purposed, to returne vnto y Citie again. And in the midde waye, being accōpanied w one seruaunt, & hauing cōmaunded the resse, to staye aside, he wēt, to do the requisites of nature. Then Martialis, (which awaited every conuenient howre) seyng the Emperour alone, & all other farre of, made haste towardes him, as though he were called for some businesse, & running vpon him vnto res, as he was vntrusting his pointes, stabbēd him in w a dagger, which he of purpose, secretly bare in hys sleave. And y same sliding in betwene y shōrt ribbes, gave vnto Antonine, being diarned, a mortal, & deadli wōnde, whereof he furthid died. That done, Martialis lept vpo his horse, & beāg to flee. But y Germanie horsemen, (whō Antonine entierly loued, & had appointed for the garde of his person) being then nearer y place, then y resse, & seinge y same murder, pursued Martialis w maine gallop, & slew him w their dardes. His slaying

The historie of Herodian

when the residue of the hoste heard therof, thei ranne
togetheres furthwyth to the Emperours dead corps;
vpon the whiche Macrinus syffre of all fell, and fay-
ned, to lament it exeadynglye. Thys chaunce, was
dolozouse vnto the Souldours, who accompted them
selues berefte, not onelye of theyz Soueraigne, but
also of theyz Companion in armes. Neþher dyd they
suspecte Macrinus, for they supposéd, that Partia,
lis had committed the murder, for the reuenge of hys
owne priuate iuris. Wherfore, every man depar-
ted to hys owne cabban. And Macrinus, haþynge
burned the body of Antoinyne, sent the ashes vnto his
Moþher, to burye. She then loiozned at Anti-
oche, where anone after, (were it of her owne
minde, or by anye mans compulsion) for the calamiti-
ties of her children, she slewe her selfe. Thys eande of
theyz lyues, had Antoinyne, & his mother Julia, after
they had lyued, as we before rehersed, and he raigned
lyre peres alone, withoute hys father, and brother.
Antoinyne being thus slayne the Soueraigne

Antoni
es mo
ther
slew her
selfe.

Anto-
ny raig-
ned alone
vi. yeres.
tayne what they myght doo, abode two dayes, with-
out a prynce, consultyng, whome they myght fyff
electe for Emperoure. For they hearde, that Artaba-
nus was commynge agaynst them, with a great an-
myghtye armie, to reuenge the deathe of hys subiec-
tes, whiche were slayne in the tyme of peace. Where-
fore, they chose fyfte for Emperoure, Audentius, a
man experte in warfare, and a polityke Captayne.
But he excusyng him selfe, through hys age, refused
thempire. Then with one consent, thei elected Macri-
nus, through the persuasions of the Tribunes (who,
as the suspition after rose, were consentynge to the
murder of Antoiny, and pertakers of Macrinus cas-
spiracie) as I shall at large hereafter declare. Then
Macrinus receaued Thempire, not for any confidece,
he had in the Souldours, but constrained therunto,
through necessitie, and the present state of theyz affai-
res. Whyles theise thynges were in doyng, thynges
came vnto them, that Artabanus was euен at hand,
wyth a wondersull puysaunce of men, amonges

Maceti-
nus toke
the rule
of thim-
pize bpa
hym.

The fourthe boke

the whiche, he hadde broughte a greate numbre of
horsemen, Archers, & men at armes, vpon Camelles,
whiche vsed to syghte, wþh longe speres. Macrinus
hearinge therof, called all the armye togythers, and
made this oracion vnto them.

¶ It is not to be merualled, that you are dolozoule, The ora-
for the deathe, of suche a prynce, or (as I maye more ciu of Ma-
truly saye)suche a companion. But it is the property crinus.
of myse men, to sustaine moderately all maner cala-

¶ It is not to be meruailed, that you are dolozouse, for the deathe, of such a prynce, or (as I maye more truly saye) such a companion. But it is the property of wyse men, to sustayne moderatly, all mortall calamites. The memorye of him, shall continually be fixed in your hartes, and by you, leste vnto you posteritee, wþþ an eternall commendacion, of the valiaunte actes, by hym atchyued. Besydes that, of hys loue to wardes you, and hys partakinge of youre paynefull trauyayles, whyles he lyued. But nowe, the tyme, and case requyret, that (after hys funeralles with due honure parfourmed) we prepare our selues, to resyste the daunger imminent. Ye see the Barbarouse king at hande, with a wonderfull multitude of the oxpantalles, hauing, as it seameth, inesse occasion of warre. For we fyſſe prouoked them, with breche of our promise, and mouing war against them, when thei were in quiete tranquillytie. All the Romayne Empyre, Strength, lyeth in your valiaunt pruwesse, and fauſtfull allegyauice. We doo not nowe contende, for oure owne boudes, and Ryuerse, with a mighty, and puissant kynge: but we muste nowe fyghte, for the laſte garde of our owne lyues, and all ours, leynge he is comme, to reuenge the murder, of his chyldren, kynred, and subiectes, (who were by vs slaine as he thinkeþ, contrarie to all equitie, and trueth. Wherefore, lette vs nowe fall to Armes, and (as the Romaynes are accustomed) obſerue a iusſe order, in oure batayles. For the Barbarouse multytude, beynge rude, and oute of order, may happen thereby, to do them selues damage. But your order, agremente, and knowledge in warrefare, as they defende your laſtegarde, eynſis, doo thei woorke youre enemyes destruction. I would therfore, that you shoulde with haulte courage, and hope of victorie, so fyghte, as it becommeth Romaynes.

Digitized by Google

The Historie of Herodian.

mains: & as you haue continually hitherto done. So shall ye not onely vanquishe the Barbarous people, but also, having obtained a famous renowned glorie, adde vnto the Romaynes, and all other, a perfecte confidence, that the former Conquest wasacheued, not by fraudulente disceypte, but by notable valiauncies, and strengthe. When he had thys muche spoken, the Souldours perceauynge the resistyng presente, fell vnto armes, and set them selues in order of battayle. At the rylyng of the Sonne, they sawe Artabanus, marchyng forward with an huge armye. And assone as the Barbarous people had, accordinge to theyr usage, worshypped the Sonne, furthwith, they ran at the Romaynes, wyth a migh-
tie, and clamorous shoute, shoting from their horses, manye arrowes, and dartes. But the Romaynes (hauyng strongly planted theyr fronte, distributed the Mauritanian horsemen, on eyther syde, and receaued into the mids of theyr battaile, the Dimilaunces, and lyght horsemen) resisted valiaunclye the Barbarous people at the syrste, the which vred them greuously, with the multitude of arrowes, & longe speares, wher with the men at armes that rode on Camelles, & horses, foughte and skirmished. On thorther syde, the Romaynes (as ofte as they moued forwardes) easelye obtained the better. But when they wer oppresed with the Barbarous horsemen, & Camelles, faining to flee, they planted Caltrops, & other engins of yron, Sharpe at thone eand in y groud. The whiche beyng hid vnder the sand, & seen of no man, were very pernicious, vnto the horsemen, & those that rode vpo the Camelles. For, after that they were fallen, on the same Caltropes, the horses, and specially the Camels (for that the same beast hath very tender hooches) became furthwith lame, and ouerthrew the yurriders. The Barbarous people, as long as they late on their horses, and Camelles, foughte very fiercly. But when they eyther alighted, or were ouerthrown, they were easelye taken. For then, they durst not abide the battayle. And yf they shold flee, or pursue theyr enemies, thei were

Interrup:

The fourthe boke.

Fol. lvii.

interrupted, with longe and wyde garmentes, ret-
chyng downe to theyr heeles. The battayle continu-
ed two dayes, from morayng to nyghte. The nyghte A longe
scuered them, and eyther armye retourned into their battayle.
Campes, as Conquerours. The thysde day, they met
in the playne, pelle, to daraigne battayle. Then the
Barbarous people, attempted, as thole whiche were
many more in number, to compasse the Romains, and
entangle them, as it were, in a nette. But the Ro-
maynes, seyng the same, ioyned not together, in a
rounde compasse, but set them selues in a longe front,
that they myghte thereby, prohibyte the compassyng
of theyr enemies. And there was so great a multitude
of men, and beastes, slayne, that all the fielde, was
ouerwhealmed wyth them: and a wonderfull num-
ber of dead carcasses, were heaped in greate heigthe, over-
especially of Camelles, the whiche laye one vpon an other. A mer-
vaylous
Wherby, there was not scope poung, for the
Souldours to fyghte. For so manye carcasses were
heaped togethers, that they coulde scarselye moue
to and fro. Wherfore, they retayned into theyr cam-
pes. Powe Macrinus, knowyng that the Barba-
rous kyng foughte so vehemently, for none other
cause, but that he thoughte, Antoinne to be presente,
in the battayle, sente certayne Ambassadours, vnto
hym wyth letters (for althoughe the Barbarous peo-
ple, are accustomed after a lytle skympshyng, to
were saynte, and werpe, and to leus of theyr begonne
enterprise, yf at the syrste bronte, it prospereth not,
accordyng to theyr myndes: yet then they persisted,
readye to renewe the fyghte, as soone as they had
burned the dead bodyes, beyng ignoraunte, that he
was dead, whiche had caused thys myschiese, and ca-
lamitie) in the whiche letters, he certysfyed hym, that
the Emperoure was deade, and hadde receyued con-
digne punishmente, for the violatyng of hys othe,
and promise: And that the Romaynes, had delyuered
the Emperore, and gouernance of all assayres, into
his handes, who was wonderfullye displeased, wyth
the thynges alreadye done.

Q. iii.

Wherfore

The Historie of Herodian.

Wherfore, he woulde deliuer the captiues, and all other spoyles, he had taken: couetynge of hys enemys, to become his confederat, and friend, and to establishe truce betwene them, by othe, & sacrifice. After these letters were redd, and Artabanus aduertised by the Ambassadors, of the death of Antoinye, accompting that he which had broken the peace, was sufficiencly punyshed, and beyng contente, that the prsoners, shoulde be restored, without more effusion of bloude, and with them all the pray, and botie, he tooke agreement, and truce with Macrinus, and retourned towardes hys owne palacie. And the Romaine Emperour led hys armye oute of Mesopotamie, and marched to Antioche.

The ende of the fourth booke.

The Argumente of the fift booke of the Herodian.



He fift booke reciteth the causes, for the whiche Macrinus, lost the fauor of the Souldiers; who chace Bassianus Emperour, & named him Antoinye. The battailes made agaynste Macrinus, the ouerthowle of hym, and his armye, with hys death. And thinsolence of Antoinye, after he was Emperour. And how he aodpted his colyn Alexander, otherwise named Alexander, and made hym hys felowe in the Empire. And finallye it telleth the causes, whersore, and how, Antoinye and Macrinus hys Moother, were slayne.

The fyfte booke of the Hystoyle of Herod. dian.



E haue in the former Booke, treated, of the Raigne, death, & destrucciō, of Anthoinie. When Macrinus was come vnto Antioche, he sente letters vnto the Senate, and people of ROME, in thys forme.

Forasmuche, as your selues perfectlye knowe, what hath bene the trade Macrinus vnto my lyfe from the beginning, howe muche my mānēs haue bene bente vnto gentlenes, and what cle- to the Se- ners I haue shewed towards you, in that my dyg- nitie, whiche dyffered not muche from the hyghest rype of dominion, (for The Emperour alwaies committeth the custodye of him selfe, vnto the fidelytie of hys Pretor) I thinke it superfluous, vse to many wordes vnto you. Your selues are not ignorant, þ I alowed not, the thiges by Anthoinie done: wherby for your sakes, I was ofte in peril of my life: whiles he, geuig credit vnto euery dñiu ste accusation, as a man void of reason, imagined your hole destruction, he vled to checke me ofte times, vþbrayding me openly for my modest humanytie, and calling me sluggard, & cockney. For beinge a man delited wð flattery, whoso euer incensed him to flagitiouse crueltie, or prouoked to malice þ furious sesualitie, of his fraticke brayne, or els sturred wð accusations, hys erasperate madnes, thole he accompted, his most trasty, lecrete, and faithfull stedes. But for my part, there hath bene nothing more acceptable vnto me from the begynninge, then discrete modestie. We haue now so finished, this mercelous Parthian warre, wherin thole Romaine Emperour stode in hasarde, that beyng nothing inferiour

The Historie of Herodian

in syghte, vnto our aduersaries, we haue made theyr
michti king, of an extreme enemy, our fauful frēde:
Who brought against vs, an innumerable multycole
of people. Further, whiles I am your Prince, ye shal
lyue frealy, wout trouble of discencion. So y, ye shal
haue cause, to name my gouernauice, rather a cōfesse-
racy of good mē, then an Empire. Neither is ther any
occasion, why any man shuld iudge me vnworthy to
be Emperour, or impute it to anye faulthe of fortune,
that being but a Knight, I haue attained the Princi-
pall Soucraignite. For of what effecte, or value, I
praye you, is y the nobilityt it selfe, yf it be not cōfio-
ned wō gētle, & meeke clemencie? And the gystes of for-
tune, doo bewisye many vnworthily; but y vertue of
the minde, bringeth vnto every man, vsing the same,
a peculier glorie. And although the nobilityt of byzth,
& kinred, w abundance of treasure, is accempted the
proper substauice, of blessed men, yet are not y same
in them cōmēded, as frō them selfes issuing, but as de-
liuered of others. But gentle mekenes, & modest assa-
bility, as thei be to be wōdred at, so doo thei win much
prapse, vnto the hauer. For what profited you, the no-
bilityt of Cōmodus, & the successio of Anthōnīne, af-
ter his father: Certes, such hauing obtained thepīre,
as it were, their iust inheritaunce, are wonte to abuse
it, as their p̄viate patrimony. But thei, whiche re-
ceauie the same at your handes, being as it were, bou-
den of dutie vnto you, endeuour them selfes, to requit
your manifolde benefites. Further y natuue nobilitie
of Princes, chāgeth ofte times into p̄yde, despysig al
others, as their inferiōrs. But thei, whiche haue obtai-
ned y same, throughe p̄fesse of modesty, do desēd, & ordre
it, as a thing gōtē by laboz, & haue al those ireuerece,
which thei had before time. And I for my part, am ful-
ly determined, to do nothing, wout your couisel, & an-
chority, & to ble you, as sole assūtautes, & Cōsulaylōrs
in thaffaires of y cōmē wealth. And ye shall al lyue, at
your own pleasures, wō the same libertye, (whiche be-
inge by yōge Emperors, succeeding their parētes, takē
away frō you) both Marcus, & Pertinax, endeuored, &
intended

The fyfte booke.

Fol. lix.

entēded, to restore vnto you again. Both the which, as
pired to thepīre, frō p̄suate estate, & degree. For it is
much better soz a mā, to leue vnto his posteritie, y be-
ginninge of his kynred, by him selfe adorned, then to
desile w̄ sensuall maners, y nobilitie vnto hym from
his predecellozs, descended. After this Epistle was red,
al thole Senate with one voice, decreed the honour of
Augustus, vnto Macrinus. Neither was the Senate
so ioyfull, w̄ the successio of Macrinus, as the cōmon
people were glad, w̄ the death of Anthōnīne. For eue-
ry mā (as he excelled in auctoritie, & riches, so much
the more he reckened, y he had auoided y sworde, whi
the before hēge ouer his shulders. Then wer al h̄xibed
Promotors, Accusers, & Seruantes, whiche had be-
traied their Masters, & Lordz, hāged vpo Gibbettes.
And al thole Citie, yea, thole Romaine Empire, was
cōfused, of al false Harlotes, Macabūdes, & Pikehākes
Of y which, som were out of hād put to deathe, other
somie punished w̄ banyshemēt. And yf any of thē lave
hid, for feare of good meny wer now at rest, y same shē
wed som apparaunce of libertē, by the space of one yere
In y which onely Macrinus enioyed thepīre. For that Thefaulē
was his only fault, y he furthō dismissed not thole ar of Macri-
nus, & hauing set every mā to his own Cōtrey, him self nūs.
cānot immediatli to Rome, which was veri desirous
of him, (the people eueri day looking, & callig for him.)
But he remained at Antioche, in delicate lyfe, & v̄led a
lower pace in going, thē he was before accustomed,
gēuing answēr rarely, & scarsely, vnto Ambassadozs,
& other persons, y cam vnto him, & the same w̄ so low
a voice, y none could well vnderstād him. And in y do-
yngē, he endeuored, to folow Marcus, but to the resy-
dew of his condicions, he did in no point attaine. For
he v̄led daily volupteuse diet, taking pleasure in daū-
syngē, and wasselyng, neglectinge the regimēte of
thempyre, & wearing Agglets of Golde, & a Gyrdle a-
dorned with precious stones. The whitch sumpteouse
aparaile, was notig grātfull vnto the Souldiozs.
For thei esteemed it more congruente, to thc Barba-
rous people, and women, then to theyr Prince.

¶.i.

Wherelore

The Historie of Herodian

Wherfore, in beholding thiese thinges, thei greatly reproued it, and despysed the trade of hys lyfe, as a thing more wanton, then became a warlyke person. And they compared the wanton sensualitie of Macrinus, and the wyttie, and warlyke maners of Antoni. ne. Further, they greatlye grudged, that they laye syll in the Campe, farre fro their native Country, ostentymes wanting their necessary foode, and were not discharged home, after peace made, & truce taken, whiles he, led hys lyfe in wanton pleasures. Wherfore, hauynge thzowen, as it were, the brydle out of their mouches, thei spake every daye agaynst him, seeking some occasion, were it euer so small, to sca hym. And so it was by desenyne appoynted, that Macrinus, after he had one onelye yeare voluptuouly Raigned, shold lose, both hys Empyze & his lyfe: fortune hauing ministred, lyght, and symplye occasyon to the Souldiors, to commytte, that thei had desyred. There was a certen Phenicien woman, named Moela, boorne in a Citye of Phenicia called Emesa, Huster unto Julia the wyfe of Seuerus, & Moother of Anthonine. Who during the Raigne of Seuerus, and Anthonine, and the lyfe of Julia, had dwelte in thumperours Palayce. The same Moela, after the death of her Huster, and murdre of Anthonyne, Macrinus had commaunded, to returne into her owne Countrey, w all her substance. And in sothe, she was wonderfull ryche of money, as one whiche of verye longe tyme, had bene brought vp within thimperiall Treasourie. And being retorne home, she there continually remayned, hauynge iwo daughters: of the whiche the eldest hyght Soemis, and the yunger was named Hammia. The eldrie had a Sonne called Bassianus, and the yunger had an other named Alexianus. Wothe these yonge me, were brought vp vnder their yeres olde, and Alexianus. x. Thei were priestes of the Sonne, whiche thenhabitauntes of that contrey, valus, vchely worship: naming it in the Phenicien tonge Helcogabalus. Unto hym haue thei dedicated, a very

greates

The fift booke.

Fol. ix.

great Lemple, decked, and adorneed, with abundance of Golde, Syluer, and preciouse stones. And not onely thenhabytantes them selues, do worshyppe it, but all the noble menne also of the nexte nacions, and the Barbarous Bynges, voo euerye yeare offer vnto it, sumptuouse, and preciouse gyftes. There is no ymage made after the Romayne, and Gre- cien facion, lyke vnto thys God. For it is a myghtye stone from the botom sharpened, more, and more vnto the toppe, much lyke a Pynapple. The colour of the stone is blacke, whiche they reporte to be fallen oute of heauen. In the same stone, are sene very many formes, and colours, whiche they affirme, to be the shape of the Sonne, made by no mans hande. Unto this ymage was Bassianus sacred priest. And because he was thelder, hym selfe moste commonlye executed the office, apparelled go:geouslye after the Barbarous maner. For he ware a cote wouen with gold, hauing longe sleues, and retchyng downe to hys heeles. Hys legges wer couered from the hames to the toes, with lyke vesture of golde, and purple. And he ware on hys head, a garland of freshe floures, shining with colours. He was then besydes in the floure of hys yonghe, and the beauteullest of all yonge men, at that tyme lyuyng. And because hys beautye, wþt the proportion of his bodye, the floure of hys age, and his gorgious decked apparel, wer so agreeable togethers, men compared him, vnto the goodly Images of Dionyse. Nowe whyles thys Bassianus was celebrating the sacrifice, and daunlyng after the Barbarous maner, men dyd attentivelye loke vpon him: but chiefly the Romayne Souldiors (either for that they knew hit to be of the Imperiall blonde, or elles, because hys florshyng beautye, allured euerye man, to caste hys eyes towardes hym) for the Romayne hoste laye then nyghe that Cypte: beyng sente thither, for the defence of Phenicia, and shortly after departed from thence, as we shall hereaster declare. As they resorted to the Churche daylye, throughe the pretence of religion, they gladlye behelde the yonge man. Amonges them

K. III. were

The historie of Herodian

certayne banyshed Romaynes, familiar with Mœsa: Whome she perceyvynge, to wonder at the beautie of thys Striplinge, reported vnto thē, that he was the Sonne of Antonine, although he were supposed anothers: doubtfull it is, whether she spake the truth, or not. For she said, þ whiles she abode in thimperial pa- laice, with her suster, Antonine had to do with her. ii. doughters, being then yong & faire. This being once tolde vnto them, & by them tolde againe vnto the residus of their felowes, was furthwith published throughout thole Campe. It was besides reported, that Mœsa had whole heapes of money, which she would gladlye distribute amonges the souldiors, if thei wold restore thempire, vnto her issue. They promised her therfore, (yf she would come priuely by night into the Campe) to opē the gate, & receaue her w her folkes in. For the which promise, the olde woman denied them nothyng that they dyd demaunde: being contente, rather to at- tempt, or take in hād any daūger, thē to lede a priuat, & abiect life. Therfore she departed secretly by night out of þ citie, w her doughters & neuerwes, & was con- ueyed, by the afoze named fugitines, into the Campe. And beinge into the same wythout interruption re- ceaued, furthewyth all the Souldours called the yong man Antoinye, apparelled hym wyth purple, and kepte hym with a sure garde, amonges them for a whyle. Then they broughte all the vitayls, and ne- cessaryes, that they coulde gette, in the nerte byplages, and fyeldes, wyth theyz wyues, and children, into the Campe. And so fortifyed them selues within the same, that yf nede required, they myght abyde the siege. When these thinges were reported vnto Macrinus, then soiornyng at Antioche, and a rumour was spred throughout the host, that Antoinynes son was founde, & that the suster of Julia, gaue money vnto the Soul- diors, when all that was spoken of, or thoughte to be possible, was holden for trew, euer man beganne to doubt, and reuolt from Macrinus: syzed partly ther vnto, through the hate thei bare vnto him, & partelye through the pitie, whiche they had of the memoze of Antoinye

The fift booke.

Fol. lxi.

Antonsne: but especially encensed, w desire, & hope, of mones. So þ furthw many fled vnto þ new Antonine. But Macrinus, cōtēpūinge thole matter as childish, & vling his accustomed alacritie of minde, abode him self at home, & sent one of his capytains furth, with as great a power, as seamed sufficient, for the subduing of the rebelles. But when Julianus (for that was the Capitains name) came thither, & began to lay siege to the walles, the Souldours þ were within, she wed fro their Towers, & other high places, the yong man: cri- yng with loude voices, that he was þ Son of Antoni- ne, & listing vp great bagges of moncy, which are the only baste of treason. And they crediting, that he was Antonines son in deade, & because they wolde haue ic so apeare, esteming also his face, & liniamentes of bo- dye to be verye lyke, strake of Julianus head, and sent it vnto Macrinus. That eanded, the gates of the for- tresse were opened, and them selfes received in. Thus was theyz power augmented, able, not onely to abide a siege, and repulse an assaulte, but also, to pytche a fielde, a great number of fugitives, dayly resortyng vnto them. When Macrinus heard therof, he incon- tinently marched for wardes with thole armie, to as- saulte the fortresse. And Antonine led his power furth against him, for that his Souldours woulde not ta- rie the siege, beyng able ynoch to syght in playne battayle. Then bothe the armyes encountred toge- thers, in the confynes of Phenicia, and Syria. On the one side, Antonines Souldours fought more A conflic. courageously, through feare of greuous punishment, if thei were vanquished. On the other side, charme of Ma- crinus, fought faintly, amonges whō many revolted vnto Antonine. He whiche when Macrinus perceaued, fearinge, lest beinge forslakinge of his all men, he shold be taken prisoner, & suffer great reproche, whi- les his souldiors fought, he threw away hys Cote ar- mour, & other imperial ornamēts, & being accōpanied with a few of his meanest souldiors, he fled awai. And hauing shauen his beard, least he shold be knewe, & clad in a simple garnēt, & his head, & face, cōtinuallye covered

The historie of Herodian

couered, he trauayled both night & day, preuenting to
celerite, the fame of his fortune. For as yet hys men
soughte to great prowes, as though Macrinus possessed
all the pire. He so escaped, as we before haue declared.
In the meane whyle, the Souldyours on eyther side
sought valiauntlye. And of Macrinus syde, the men
at armes of hys garde, named Pretorians, suffayned
alone the whole burnte. For they were talle, & mighty
men, and chosen, and approued warriours. The reste
of the multitude, toke Antonymes parte. But when
they, whiche a great whyle had soughten for Macri-
nus, coulde neyther see Macrinus hym selfe, nor the
Imperiall Diademe, and ornamente, beyng igno-
rante where he was become, whether he were slaine
or elles fledde, they wylste not what counsayle to
take. And althoughe they purposed no longer to figh-
for hym, whyche appeared, or coulde be founde no-
where, yet feared they, to yeld them selues, vnto theyr
enemys power, as recreant, and vanquished Sub-
iectes. Then Antonyme, knowyng by the Captures,
that Macrinus was fledde, sent incontinently, to ad-
vertise them, that they in bayne foughte for a timo-
rous and fugitiue Coward; promysynge them on his
othe, that he woulde forgyue, and forget, all that was
by them done, and vse theym from thenceforth, for
the garde of hys personne. The which, they all credi-
tyng, escaled furthwith from further syghtyng.

Then Antonyme without delaye, sent certayne after
Macrinus, who was longe before escaped. And be-
yng founde in Chalcedon a Cytre of Bythinia,
verye sore sycke, and worne through hys contyn-
nuall trauayll, and hydden in a house of the Subur-
bes, had hys head there smyten of. It is thoughtee,
that he mynded to go to Rome, affyenge hym selfe in
the beneuolence of the people. But in saylyng to-
wardes Europe, in the narowe Sea of Propontis,
wygh vnto Byzantium, a contrarious wynde draue
hym backe, as it were of purpose, towardes the place,
where he shouldynys he hys lyfe. Thus happened it,
that Macrinus escaped not, by sleyng awaye, the
bandes

The pze
corian
men of
armes.

Chalcedō

The death
of Macri-
nus.

Propon-
tis.

Byzant-
ium.

The fyfte boke

Fol. lxii.

bandes of hys enemies: receauing a bylathouse death,
and entending to late to goo to Rome, when he shold
in the beginning haue done the same, and having at
this his ende, bethis his counsell, and fortune, cleare
against him. After this sorte, was Macrinus slayne,
wyth hys Sonne Diadumenus, whome a lytle be-
fore, he had assoepted vnto him, in the pize. Now af-
ter thole army had pronounced Antonyme for Empe-
rour, when him selfe had taken vpon hym the chiefe
gouernance of thempye, and all the oriental assay-
res were sett in order, as every one most needed, by
the discretion of his Trauainmoocher, and other his
frendes, (for that hym selfe was verye yonge of age,
and vaskilfull in matters of greate importaunce) so-
tournyng there but a shorte space, he caused hys re-
mouing to be proclaymed, accordyng to the wyl of
Dosa, whiche chieflie coueted, and made hast, towar-
des Thimperpall Pallacie of Rome, wherewith, he
so longe before hadde bene acquaynted. When the
Senate, and people of Rome, harde of thiese thinges,
every man began to be sorowfull, with the tidinges.
But thei mynke of force, and necessytie, then alow it,
seyng he was chosen, by the men of war. And accu-
selyng within them selues, the negligent mynke, and
sensuall maners, of Macrinus, thei imputed thole de-
faute of his ouerthowre, vnto hys owne slouthe, and
to none other man, as causer therof. Antonyme be-
ing departed out of Siria, wintred his armes at Ni-
colome, the season of the yeare so constraining him. dia.
Then he began to ware insolent aboue measure, ce-
lebratyng dailye the honour of his Countrey God, lencye of
with superfluous, and vndecent pompe, & daunses. Antomy-
Hym selfe was cladde in wanton, and luxuriose ap- ne.,
pare, wouen wyth Purples, and Golde, decked with
Duches, and Braceletes, Chaynes, and Kynges of
Golde, & ware a Crowne like vnto a Chaplet, ado-
ned with Golde, and pretiousse stones. The forme of
hys habyte, was, as it were, a meane, betwene the
Phenicien, and Median Apparayle. He defayned the
Romaine garmentes, bicause they were made of volle,
S. i. the

The historie of Herodian

the whiche was, as he said, vyle, & of no estimaciō. Neither wold he any webbe, but suche as were of Sirian silke, accustomē to cō abrode, w̄ y lown of fleutes, & Tabors, as though he shuld celebrate, y feast of Bacchus. Whē Mocla beheld these his dossolute maners, he begā w̄ hūblepeticiō to persuade him, to were y h̄s Heniate house, in y straige & Barbarouse vesture, he shold offēde the eyes of the beholders. Which being unaccustomed vnto suche wātonnes, ceputed it moze seamly for Wome, then mē. But he, cōtempning the olde womans wordes, entending to trust no mā, (for he retained none about his person, but suche as were agreeable vnto his olwe sensualitye) and fullye mynding, to vse the same apparayle continually, determined being absent, to make a profe, with what countenance, & after what sorte, the Senate, and people of Rome, would accepte his usage. Wherefore, he sente to Rome, his olwe picture painted lyuely in a table, with the lym amentes, & facyon of apparell, wherēn he was wōt to sacrifice, vnto his God. And theri the figure of his God also, vnto whō he was sacred: commanding them y caried it, to set it in y middes of the Senate house, in some high place, over y head of vice: y when y Senatours were assembled, thei shuld offre encense & wyne. He cōmaūded also, y all y Romayne Magistrates, whiche vled to execute publique sacrifices shuld before all their Goddes, whō thei valed to sacrifice vnto, name, & honoz, his God Yeleoga balus. Wherby it happened, that when he entred in to the Cittie, y Romaynes beheld no newe, or straige syghte, for that thei daily before had seen his picture. Hē, after he had distributed amōges y people bouēfull gifte, as al new Emperours are accustomed, he set furth many sūptuouse shewes, & plates. And builēd a large, and gorgeouse Tēple, soz his God, & vnto the same, many auulters: vpon the whiche, euery mōning, he sacrificed a. C. Bulles, & a greate number of cheepe. And heaping vpon the auulters, all kindes of odiferous splices, he vled to poure down, many Cuppes, ful of y best olde wines, y could be gotē. So y ther
Matne sa
grispces.

The fyfte boke

Fol. lxiii.

gan dolyn, shdyng streames of wīne, misled w̄ bloud. About h̄ auulters, he caused many to daule, w̄ h̄ sowns of diuere infcūties, amōges whō sūdzp Phēniciē wome plaid vpō Ciballes, & Tibrelles. Al h̄ Senatours, & knigthes behelde the, stādig in a rōud circle, like vnto a Theatre Thīnwardes of beastes, & swete sinellig perfumes, wer the caried vpō mēs heades, in dishes of Gold: not by any base or priuate perso, but by p̄cipal Magistrates, Capitanes of y war, & Rulers of y Provinces: whō wer al clad in lōg garmētes, wōue through out w̄ purple, & ware linne lockes vpō their leate, as y Prophētes accustomed to do in thōse regiōs. And he thought, y he did v̄ry honozably entreate thōse: whō he made partakers of this solēnity. But albeit, he celebrated daily w̄ daules, & melody, thōse sacrifices, yet did he put to death, many noble, & rich mē: being accusēd vnto him, y thei wer nothig pleased, w̄ thōse vaine Ceremonies, and his voluptuous sensuality, but vled dayly to speake v̄l of it. He toke to wife, a noble wōmā of Rome, whō he named Augusta. But shortlye after forsoke her, and deprivēg her, of all Imperial honour, he cōmaūded her, to lede a priuate, and symple lyfe. Then sayning him selfe to be rauished w̄ loue, (that he might seue to do som māli act) he maried y forcs, a vēttal virgin, whō y lawes had bōud to be continualy chaske. And cōfōrted w̄ letters, y Senate, beyngh so wētowful for y facinoouse act) sayig, y it was an humā. Virgyns me syn, because he was rauished w̄ her loue. He affirme, y it was decēt for a priest, to Marri a Nunne. For so shuld y mariage be more fortunate. Neuerthelesse, shortlye after, he rejected her also, & maried y thīrd wife which was thought to be descended of y bloode of Ch̄mod. Neither did he only delude mortall matrimon, but he sought also a wife for his god. For he caused to be brought into his Chāber, y image of Pallas, whō y Romans do gretely worship: being secretly hidde, image of & permitted to be seue of no mā. The same goddesse, I Pallas, say, being frō y time, it was brought fōrth of Troy, vnto that day vntouched (sauing when y Tēple was burned) did he remoue out of her Deate, & toponed her in mariage vnto his God, w̄thimper all Pallaiers.

D. y.

The historie of Herodian

But soone after, he altered that mynde, sayenge, that it was vnpleasaunt for his God, to haue a warlyke, & armed wyfe. And therefore he comaundered the ymage of Urania, to be brought vnto hym. The whiche was chly worshipped of y Carthaginenses, & al Africque supposed to be erected by Wido the Phenicia, when he bulded Carthage, in the cōpace of an ore hide. This Goddess, the Africans name Uzania. And the Pheniciens cal her Astroarchen, affirming her to be the Sonne. Wherefore, he said, that the Matrige of the Sonne & the Moone was agreeable. Her Image therfore, he caused to be broughte fourthe, and all the Golde, and Siluer, which was in her Temple, he comaundered to be giuen to his God for a dower. And after it was brought, and set vp by the Image of Heles gabalus, he comaundered feastfull daisies, wyth banketing, and solemnitie, to be celebrated openly, & pryvately, throughoute thole Cytie, and Italy, for the Matrige of the Goddes. He bulded also in the Suburbes, a mighty, & sumptuous Temple: into y whiche, in chende of Sommer, he caried his God. Thynking that he muche pleased the people, with his Enterludes & Comedies, with his open bākets, & nyght watches. He conueied his God, as I said, out of the City, into y Suburbes, in a Chariot adornd w Golde, & preciouse stones, drawne by. vi. goodlye white hōrses, of great height, notably decked with Golde, and variey of harnesse. No man rode in that Chariot, but the people ran on every syde of it, gasinge vpon the God. And Anthonine hym selfe rode before the Chariot, w his face backewards towardes the hōrse tayle, & wyth beholding y image, continually as he rode, he so finisched this his fonde iorney. And least he shoulde fall, or syde vniwares, in that his vnwyse ridinge, he caused the strectes to be thicke couered with lāde, & his Gard helde hym on eyther syde, that he might w moze saftey sit on his hōrse. The people rā about him w Loxches & Crislettes, strowinge of floures, & Garlades, in his wate. There accompanied besides this Pōpe, y images of al y Goddes, & al other preciouse cōnametes which were

Uzania.

Car-
tage.
Astroar-
che.

The me-
re solye,
of Anto-
nyne.

The fiftthe boke.

Fol. Ixiiii,

Wer in y Cēples, the tokēs of honoz, & y beautifullest household stufle of Thempire, w the men at armes, & al the Romayn host. When he had brought these thinges into the Temple, layed the same there, and finisched hys sacrifice, he went vp into the hyghe towers, whiche wer of purpose there erected, & out of them, he threwe manye thynges amonges the people. That is to weete, cuppes of Syluer and Golde, garmentes of ryche wōrke, and all sortes of lynnen clothe. He distri buted amonges them also, all kynde of tame beastes, except Swyne, from the whiche (accordyng to the Phenicien usage) hym selfe abstained. In the catching wherof, many perished: some beyng thrust to deathe in the press, other sone slayne wyth the Souldours weapons. So that the same festiuall Pompe, was turned into a dolorous calamitie of manye men. Hym selfe besydes, was manye tymes scene cartynge, and leappynge. For he woulde not permitte hys owne flagitious exercises to be hydden: goynge often tymes abrode, wyth hys eyes painted, his browes made red, and hys face beyng naturallye beautiful deformed, with vndecent colours. The whiche when Mesa perceaued, suspectyng the indignation of the Souldours, and feareynge, that ys oughte but good came vnto hym, her selfe shoulde be constrainyd, to retournis to her private lyfe, she persuaded the foolish, and rash: yonge man, to adopte into the Empire with him hys kynsman, and her newewe, beyng borne of her doughter Hammica. And that she myght the better please hym, she sayde, that he, whiche executed onyl the office of a P̄riest, & celebrated the sacrifices of the Goddes, ought to haue some Substitute, which shoulde gouerne the Empire, out of care, and troublē. Nowe was ther no straunger, nor forreyne person, so meete to be elected therunto, as hys owne kynsman. The same was Alerianus, whiche then was called Alerander, by hys fathers name, chaunged into the name of the Macedonien kyng. For the same kyng, being of great renowne, dyd Anthonine the Sonne of Seurus, chieflye eruerence. Whiche Anthonine, theyz

S. iii. Graundz

Graundemother persuaded the **Souldyours**, to be the Father of them both: blasynge therby, the Fornication of her daughters, that she might therby cause the **Souldyours** the better to loue them. **Wherfore** **Alexander** was declared **Emperoure**, and created **Emperour** full wyth **Antonyne**: the **Senate** determining wyth **skorne**, and **laughter**, that **whyche** **Antonyne** required. That is to saye, hym selfe, beyng but **fourtene** **yeares olde**, to be the Father, and **Alexander**, **whyche** was **biueth entred** the **twelue** **yeare** of **hys age**, to be the **Sonne**. After **Alexander** was pronounced **Emperoure**, **Antonyne** endeououred to corrupte hym, wyth **hys** **sensuall maners**, that in **syngynge**, and **daunsynge**, beyng partaker of **hys** **Priesthode**, he shoulde weare the same apparell, and bse the same fassions with hym. But **Mammea** the **Woother** of **Alexander**, preserued hym from all **dishonestye**, and **fyllye**, **brayngynge** hym vp priuely vnder diuers learned men, in **litterature**, **modestie**, and **good maners**: **accustomyng** hym vnto **Wastelynge**, and other **decent exercisles**, and **instructyng** hym, in the **Greeke**, and **Latyn** tongue. **Wherat** **Antonyne** greatly grudged, repenteinge him of his adoption, and participatiyon of the **Empyre**. And **therfore**, he expelled out of his **Palacie**, all those **Instructours**, of whome some the **excellentes**, he put to death, and other he afflicted with exile, allegyng agaynst them, **foolishe**, and **vaine** causes, that they corrup ted **hys** **Sonne**, not suffering hym to vse **lybertye**, and **daunsynge**, but instructinge hym, in **modest**, and **comelye** **exercisles**. And he fell into such extreme folye, that he distributed the chiefe dignitez, in the common wealth, amonges players of **Commodies**, and **Enterludes**. For he made **Liu tenant generall** of the **Armie**, a certayne daunger, whiche in **hys** **youth**, had bene a common **Player** vpon **Scattoulds**. Another of the same ravel, he appoynted **gouvernour** of the **youth**, and another, chiefe of the **order of knyghthode**. Unto **Carters**, **Ruffians**, and **disorderd Brotheis**, he commyted the chiefe charge of the **Empyre**. And vnto **hys** **Bonde men** and

and **Lybertynes**, as euerye of them exceeded another in abomination, he clynered the rule of the **provinces**. Thereby, all thynges, whyche before were honest, were tourned into byle **beastlynesse**: whyche caused that all men, and chiesely the **Romayne Souldyours**, detested hym, as one whych fashyoned hys countenaunce, more wantonlye, then became anye honeste woman. For he was decked wyth chaynes, and ouches of golde, and apparelled wyth lasciuious clothyng, vncomlye for a man, and daunsed daylye in the syght of them all. **Wherfore** they bare moze benevolent myndes vnto **Alexander**, and had better confidenc in that **Childe**, for that he was modestly brought vp. And they all sauied hym, from y treason, and myschiefe of **Antonyne**. **Neyther** woulde **hys** **Woother** **Mammea**, suffer hym to touche any meate, or drynke, that was sent from the other. The chylde also vsed not any of the **Imperiall**, or **common Cookes**, and **Pasterers**, but such as **hys** **Woother** had chosen for hym, whyche were both trusy and honest. She gaue hym money also to distribuite priuely amonges the **Souldyours**, whyche chiesely couete the same, that he myghte by it, as by a sure lynked **Chayne**, drawe them vnto hym.

When **Antonyne** perceaued that, he inuented all the **mischiefe** he coulde agaynst **Alexander**, and **hys** **Woother**. Neuerthelesse, theyz **common Graundmoo ther** **Moesa** aboyded all suche **crueltye**. For she was a woman of a stoute courage, and had also of longe tyme soiourned in the **Imperiall Palacie**, wyth her **Sister** **Seuerus** **wife**, whereby she was throughlye skylfull of that whiche **Antonyne** intended: who was naturallye full of talke, and wythoute discretion, accustomed to blashe abrode, what soever he mynded, or woulde haue done. And then seyng **hys** **enterprise** not to vroceade, as he wylshed, he determined to deprive the **Chylde** all of **Imperiall honours**. And therefor comauanded that he shoulde be no longer saluted as **Emperoure**, neyther woulde he suffer hym to go abrode amonges the people.

The Historie of Herodian.

But the Souldours desyred hym wonderfullye, disdaynyng that the Empire should be taken from him. Then Anthonine caused a rumoure to be blowen abroad, that Alexander was deade, to the entente he myght thereby perceave, after what sorte, the Souldours woulde take the same. But they seynge the chylde not appeare abrode, and hauyng the hertes persed wyth those sorowefull tidynges, wared wonderfull wrothe, withelde from Antonine hys accustomed garde, and hauyng shutte the gates of theyr Campe, sayde, they woulde perforce see Alexander, within theyr Temple. Antonlyne beyng thereby smitten wyth feare, rode unto the Campe in the Imperiall Chariot, beyng adorned wyth precious stones, wherin also late Alexander. Whome the Souldours, (after they were bothe entred into the Campe, and brought into the Temple therof) saluted aboue measure: folowynge hym wyth ioyfull acclamations, and utterlye as I myghte saye, contempnyng Antonlyne. He beyng therwyth meruaylously chaufed, after he had liven one nyght within the Temple, and noted the Souldours, whiche had shouted vnto Alexander, commaunded them all to be put to deathe, as authoress of sedicion, and rebellion. They thereat disdaynyng, and abhorryng before tyme Antonlyne, wyshynge also to dispachte out of life, that monstrous Emperour and to helpe theyr Companions, and perceauyng the tyme to be apte for the deede, furthwyth lewe Antonlyne hym selfe, and hys Moother Soemis, who was by chaunce at that tyme ther present, and with them, all theyr Seruantes, and ministers of vice, that came wyth them into the Campe. Then they deluyered vnto the common people, the boodes of Antonlyne, and Soemis, to be drawen wyth shame, throughoute the stretes of the Citty. The people dyd so, and then threw them into the common syntes, that they myght be carryed into Tyber. And tho Souldours, hauyng saluted Alexander for Emperoure, broughte hym into Imperiall palacie, beyng verye vonge, and as yet obeyit vnto the comandementes of his grandmother.

Finis.

Antonlyne & hys
Moother
Sayne.

The Argumente of the

Synte Booke of Herodian.

Fol. lxi.

In the synte Booke, the Author treateth of the bountie and clemencie, of Alexander, & the auarice, of his Moother Hammiea. Of the warre, made by Accareres Kyng of Persia, and the occasyon therof. Against whome Alexander appayled a great army, and deuided it into thre partes. Then ensuen, the causes wherfore, Alexander loste the loue of the Souldours. Who in the beginning of the warre, against the Germanes, chale Maximinus Emperour, whi che procured Alexander, with his Moother, and all hys frendes to be slayne.

The synte booke of the Hystorie of Herodian.



It is manifestly, in the former booke, declared, what ende of lyfe, had Anthonine theldre. After whome, Alexander alone possessed the name, and regimenter, of The empire. But thadmission of all assayres, and gouernaunce of the weale publique, appertained to the women: who en- deuored to reduce all thin- gies, to their pristinacie seemelynnes, and modesty. For syrst of all, thei elected. xvi. of the ordre of Senators, excelling in grauuty of maners, and cōtingencie of life, to be assistante & of preuy vns. Coulail Theperox, is vnto the consent of whiche Counsaylours, there was nothing, eyther in word, or writing, cōsylmed. Wher- by this forme of p̄sincipality becam gracieful vnto hym. Alexander & the Em- pyre, rui- sed by wo- men.

L. i.

The Historie of Herodian

at Armes, and Senate of Rome, for that it was chau-
ged, from mosse pestiferous Tiranny, unto the ouer-
lyght, and rule of noble men. Then were the ymages
of the Goddes, whiche Anthonine in hys lyfe tyme,
had remoued oute of theyz Seates, restored agayne
into theyz owne Temples, and places. Then were all
those, whiche Anthonine had rashelye, for their cupli-
maners, aduaunced unto highe dignities, deposed, &
set to their accustomed lyfe, and occupacion. Then
all Ciuyple, and foroyne matters of iudgemente, were
apoynted to thordzing of wylle, and profoude learned
men, in the lawes: And all warlyke assayres, comi-
ted to the rule, of valiaunte Capitaines, and experte
men of warre. When Thempyre had bene after thy-
sore a greate space governed, Moesa whiche was de-
ty aged, ended her life. Unto whome, all imperial ho-
nours were appoynted, and, as the Romayne blage-
is, she was canonized wþth immortallite. After
her death, Mammea, perceauing her selfe to be leaste
alone unto her Sonne, endeououred to contine we the
same forme of gouernement, which was begon. And
sayinge that the yonge man, enjoyed nowe alone thole
dominion, she feared leste his yonge age, shoulde wa-
lue in extreme liberty, and thereby fall into some of
his kinsinans vices. Wherefor she awayted wel his
person, and all places of the Coozte: not sufferig him
to be approched unto, of any yonge man, whose lyfe,
and maners, were suspected, least that his good dys-
posid, wþld be corrupted, through Paralytes, and
flatterers, whiche wþld prouoke his minde, & appeti-
te, then dorishing, into wþton & naughty affectiōns.
She perswaded him, to exercycle hys body, in decente
recreacions, the better parte of the daye, and that be-
ty often, leste there shoulde be anye space leste, for yll
thoughtes, whyles he myghte be better occupied, in
apoynting thinges necessary to be done. There was
naturallly besides in Alerander a geele, and mēke dis-
position, bent unto affablytie. The whiche thynge, his
age folowing, made apparaunte. For. xiiii. yeares,
he gouerned Thempyre, withoute effusion of bloude,
not as muche as one man, in that time, thzough hys

The syxte booke.

Fol. Ixvii.

procurement, beyng put to death. And although ma-
ny, through greuouse offences, iustly deserued death,
yet dyd he euermore absteyne from the execucion of
them. The whiche thing, a man shal not easely finde,
in any Emperour, especially in those whiche succea-
ded Marcus. No man can remember, that (whyles he
reigned,) any was without iudgement put to deathe.
He accustomed to reprehende his Moother, & blame
her greatly, for that she was somewhat coueytouse of
money, and seemed ouer gready in heaping of Tre-
asures. For taking vpon her, that she gathered money
togþthers, to encryche Alerander withall, þ he myght
therby, more abundauntly bestow gystes vpon the
Souldours, she syld her owne Costers, wþth the
same. The whiche her couetyse, blemysched greatly
Themperours honour, that mangre hys mynde, the
couetouse woman, shoulde catche, and pyll, by couine,
and fraude, the enheritaunce of many mē. She gaue
to her Sonne in Marriage, a Mayden descended of no-
ble bloude, whome notwithstanding that her husbād
entyerlye loued her) her selfe shorlye after expelled
Thimperiall pallacie, wþth greate obloquy, & shame.
And coueyting her selfe to be onely named Augusta,
she enuyed for that cause the mayden, and became so
outragious agaynst her, that the maydens father,
(albeit he were in greate auctorite with Alerander)
beyng impacient of the injury, done vnto his dough-
ter, and hym, by Mammea, fledde into the Campe for
his owne safegarde, saying, although he were muche
bounde unto Alerander, for hys manifolde benefices,
yet he maste of force, accuse Mammea, for the greate
reprōche she had done vnto him. But she being ther w-
chaufed, comaued him to be slaine, & þ yōge woman
his daughter, being thrusst out of hys imperiall Pallacie,
she exiled into Aphrique. Neuertheles this was done
againt þ wil of Alerander. For his Moother ruled hym
aboue reaso, & had hi alway obediē vnto her comauide-
mentes: so þ this one thing may be reproued in Alera-
nder, þ he vled more humilitie, & reuerence, towardeſ to muche
his Moother, then becam him, in obeyeng, & accōplys-
ing her comauandement, against hys owne wyl. Moother
Alerander
obedient
unto hys
L. G.

The Historie of Herodian

Now whē he had after this sorte, by the space of thir-
tene yeres, raigned, the which tyme, he alone enjoyed
the Empyre, in tranquillity, without disturbance,
or complainte, of any person, Sodeinly loo, ther came
letters out of Siria, & Mesopotamia, wherby he was
certified, that Artareres King of Persia had ouerco-
me the Parthianes & Artabanus theyr king, which

Siria.
Mesopotamia.
Artareres.
Tygris.

men the Parthianes & Artabanus theyr king, which
firste surnamed hi self great, & ware twoe Crownes,
and not onely bereft him thoriental dominion, but al-
so his lyfe, subdued the Barbarous people his neigh-
bours, and made them his tributaries. That he helde
not him selfe within the Riuier of Tigris, but had re-
couered the bāckes therof, & was entred wi[n]t the bou-
des of Romaine Empire, invading, & pyllig Mesapo-
tamia, & menacing war unto Siria. That he chalen-
ged all the Scite of Lande called Asia, situate ouer a-
gainst Europe, whiche was enironed w[th] the Aegia
an Sea.

Asia.
Europe.
The Aegi-
an Sea.
Propōtis
Cyrus.
Medes.
Ionia.
Caria.

an Sea.
Propōtis
Cyrus.
Medes.
Ionia.
Caria.

the straites of P[er]sponis, as the auncient pos-
session of the Persians. Because that fro the tyme of
Cirus, who first of all translated the kingdome from
the Medes, to the Persians, until the raigne of Dari-
us their last Kyng, (whom Alexander deprived of his
dominion) all thorientall costes, as far as Ionia, and
Caria, were gouerned by the Persian Rulers, & Ca-
pitaines. Wherefore, he affirmed, þ it was his duty, to
see unto the restauracio[n] of þ auncient & whole Empire
unto the Persians again. Whē Alexander heard hercōf,
beig greatly disquieted w[th] those sodeine tidiges of bat-
tayle, (for he had from his infancie ben tradid in qui-
et tranquillity, & norisched w[th] the Cittie pleasures) and
hauing first cōsulted w[th] his frendes, & Counsailours,
he cōcluded, to sede Ambassadours into thorient, with
his letters, whiche he supposed wold repreſſe the Bar-
hariens hope, and pacify their tumultuous inuasions.
The letters were of this sorte directed.

That it behoued Artareres, to holde him selfe con-
tent w[th] his owne Boundes, and Limites of dominio[n].
Not to sturre, or cause anye more dysencion, ney-
ther beyng puffed w[th] bayne confydence, and rashe
hope, attempte anye greate warre.

. That

The fiftē booke.

Fol. lxxviii,

That euerye man, ought to quiet hym selfe w[th] hys
owne substaunce, and that he shoulde not have suche
suceſſe in hys syghte, agaynst the Romaynes, as he
had obtayned agaynst hys neyghbours. He dyd putte
hym in remembrance besydes, of the victories, whi-
che Augustus, Traianus, Lucius, and Seuerus, had
gotten agaynst them. Wyth these letters, Alexander
Inposed to reduce the Barbarous kyngē vnto peace,
and concorde, throughe feare of the menaces in
them contayned. But he vitterlye contempnyng the
same, determined (all talke set a parte) to trye the mat-
ter, w[th] weapon, and syghte. And then w[th] more
crueltye, foraged, and spoyled, the whole countrey of
Mesopotamia, and carayd awaye the Inhabitauntes
as a bootye, and assualted all suche Fortresses of the
Romaynes, as were buylded vpon the Riuage, to de-
ſende the boundes of the Romayne Empire.

And being a man naturally glorious, & haulty of stro-
macke, he thoughte to subdew the whole worlde, enla-
med therewith the prosperous sucesse of all hys
affayres, euer, without looking for, obtayned. Neþher
were the thynges of smale importaunce, whych hym
deled hys mynde, to the couetyng of a greater Real-
me, then hys owne: takyng syrte vpon hym, to in-
uade the Parthians, w[th] warre, and to recover the
Parthian kyngdome.

For many yeres, after the death of Darius, from
whome, Alexander the Macedonian, bereft hys kyng-
dome, the Macedonians them selues, and those which Alexan-
der succeeded, gouerned þ regiōs of the Orient, der.
and Asia, distributed in sundry parces amonsgs them.
But when the Macedonian power was greatlye
wozne, throughe sundrye batayles, growen by dissen-
sion amonsges them selues, Arsaces the Parthian, is
cōputed by Histories, to be the syrte Persuader of Arsaces.
the Parthians, to reuolte from the Macedonians.
And he, by the conse[n]te of the Parthians, and other
Barbarous people hys neyghbours, wearyng on
hys head the Diademe, obtayned the kyngdome, and
keſſe the same vnto hys posterite, euen vnto the time
L.iii. of

The historie of Herodian

of the kyng Artabanus, whome Artareres hausing slayne, restored (as it is sayde) the kyngdome vnto the Persians, and broughte in subiection, the mygh Barbarous nacions, he dyd nowe prouoke, the Romayne power to armes.

Whan relational was made hereof to Alexander at Rome, he determined no longer to haue the insolencie of the Barbarous kyng, especiallye slayne hys Liuetenantes, and Captaines called hym chyfper. Finallye, wyth greate grudgynge, and sore aggrauement, hys wyll, he prepared hys exection into the battaile. And therore, generall musters were made throughout Itaile, and the Provinces, of all suche as seamed apse, eyther in stature of boore, or strengthes of yeares. In the same musters, were many viuites, and tumultes, amonges the Romayne subiectes, reasonyng, what power myghte be equal, vnto so great a multitude of Barbarous people. And Alexander commaunded all the Pretorian Souldours, and other men at armes, whyche were at Rome, to repayre into the fieldes: where hym selfe beinge ascended into the Tribunal seate, spake these wordes vnto theym.

The oration of Alexander
I woulde wylshe (my felowes in armes) to make suche an oration vnto you, as shoulde (according to the accustomed wyl) vnto me the speaker, get loue, and honour, and vnto you the hearers, bryngynge ioye, and gladnes. For sayng we haue now many yeres lyued, in peaceable tranquillitie, yf ye shal heare of any new thing lately happned, peradventure ye wylbe a feare of the same, as of a thynge vnluckelye chaunsed. Neuertheles, it becommeth valiaunt & moderat men, in deede to wyl the besse: but yet to suffer, & take in worth, what souer happeneth. For as the thynge we do with pleasure is swete, and delectable, so is that we do with vertue, comendable, & gloriouse. And as he which first geueth occasion of warre, seameth iniurios, euen so he which withstandeth wronge, is more confident in his coscience, & conceaueth a better hope of his quarell, for that it is ryghteous. Artareres a man

The sixte booke.

Fol. lxix.

man of Persia, hauyng slayne hys Soverayn, he forde Artabanus, and translated hys kyngdome vnto the Persians, doch nowe enterypse, in contempnyng the Romayne Matessie, to pronoke vs to battaile: inuadynge at thys present, and wassynge our provinces. I endeououred at the sytle to reduce hym by gentle letters, from hys unsaefable gredines, and exhorted hym, not to couepte that was not his owne. But he, being puffed vp with Barbarous insolencie, wyl not holde hym selfe within hys owne boundes, but chalengeth vs vnto Battaille. Let vs not therfore triste in the thynge, or deferre the matter. But you whiche are here present, of the auncient sorte of Souldours, cause hym to knowe the manysoldie victories, whiche you haue obteined, vnder the gouernement, and leading of Seuerus, and my fader Antonine. And you whiche are yong men, leke and coueyte (I say) this praise, and glorie: whereby all men maye perceauie, that you knowe, not onely, howe to lyue in peace quietlye, and obserue it reuerentlie, but also when nede requireth, to fyght valiauntly. Touchyng the Barbarous people, as it is theyr usage, to pursue vehementlye, all suche as at the syrst flee, and recuale, euen so doo them selues tourne theyr backes, vnto thos whiche manfully persist in the fygth. For they loke not for anye victorye in fyghtynge a playne Battaille, but blyngynge Inuasions, and Rodes, accompte them selues Conquerours, of all they can gette by stelth and robbe ry. But we, on the contrarye parts, haue all thynge decked meete for the warres, wherewyth, we haue learned to ouerthrowe, and vanquyshe them.

Whan Alexander hadde spoken these wordes, the men of armes receaued hym ioyfullye shouting, and shewynge theym selues readye, to goe wyth good wylles into the warre. Then he distributed a greate summe of money amonges theym, and commaunded them, to prepare them selues to the tourney. Anone after, he made the lyke Oration in the Senate house, and appoynted the daye of hys departure.

The

The historie of Herodian

The de-
parture
of Alex-
ander fro
Rome.

The whiche beyng come, after he had (accordinge to the auncient vsage) fynished hys sacrfice, he departed the Senate, and all the Romaine people conveyng hym out of Rome: vpon the which he loked backe wth wepyng eyes. Neþher was there anye of the common people, whiche watered not hys plantes, in the beholdinge of hys departure. For all the multitude was desyrous of hym, because he was broughte vp amonges them, and had gouerned them pire, þerþe manye yeaþes, wth mucþe modellþe.

When he was departed, he vþed dilygent sped in his tourney, visited the Illirian people, & men of war, increased hys power euþer wher, & wet vnto Antioche. In that Cittie, he prepared all suche necessaries, as were expedient for the warres. And caused hys Soulþours to exercise them selues in seates of armes. Hym selfe prouyded wth mucþe dilygence, weapons and harnessel for the same.

It semed then good vnto hym, to prone by another Ambassade, wherþer the Persian Kyng, woulde condescende vnto peace, and vnicie. For beyng hym selfe presente, he lytle doubted, eyther to persuade Artaxerres, as he woulde, or at least wþle put hym in feare, wth menaces. But the barbarous kyng, dismissed the Romaine Dratours home agayne, wþout any thyng concluded. And in theyz compayne sent fourty of the goodlyest men of stature, in hys armye: who were gorgioulye apparelled, in ryche Robes adourned wth gold, rode vpon great Coursers, and caried great Bowes in theyz handes, thynkyng to abashe the Romaines wth the syghte of theyz valnes, and sumptuous rayment. The effect of theyz Ambassade was this.

The great Kyng Artaxerres, commaunded the Romaines wþ theyz Emperour, to depart out of Syria, & al that part of Asia, whch is situate oueragainst Europe: & suffer the Persians, to raygne, & haue dominion, as farre as Ionia, and Caria, and all suche landes geaþea, as the Aegean Sea, and Pontus doo enuiron. When these fourtre Ambassadours had declared their message,

The syxte boke

Fol. lxx.

message, Alexander commaunded them, to be apprehended, toke from them al their sumptuous apparel, and set them into Phrigia, where he alotted vnto the certayne Villages, and fieldes to tyll, and enhabit, þerþe satylled wth this punyshmente of exyle, from their native Countrey. For he rekened it very cruel, and nothing agreeable to manhood, to put them to death, for thererutynge theyz Maisters commaundemente, not beyng taken in battayle.

When thiese thynges were thus ended, and whiles Alexander was busþed in pþeparacion of Bridges to passe ouer the Ryuers, and to leade the Romaine Armie into the confynes of the Barbariens, therre revolted, and fledde fro hym, many Egypþian Soulþours, and in Siria also, dyuerse Commocions, beganne to kyndle agaynste hys gouernemente.

But the same were furþerwþh appealed, and the Rebelles taken, and put to deathe. Then Alexander sente certayne armyes of Soulþours, into the nigh Regiones, that thereby the invasions of þe Barbarous people, myghte more easylþe be restrayned.

All whiche thynges, beyng thus sett in ordre, and as greate an armie leuyed, as he thoughte, would be equall of power, vnto hys enemys Hoste, he deuyded them, by hys friendes counsayle, into three sunþe armyes. Of the whiche, one he commaunded to marche towardes the North, throughe Armenia, der deuþ whiche was reputed frendely vnto the Romaines, and to inuade the borders of the Medians. An other three par army he sent towardes the North also, commanding them, to passe by thole syeldes of the Barbariens, where Tigris, and Euphrates, are receyued, into Armeþa.

greate Maryshes, & Pooleþ, and thereby it is vncertaine where they ende. The thyrd parte, hym selfe promyzed to lede betwene boþe the other Armies, Euphrates to oppresse them soleynly, wth dyuerse invaþions, when they were vñready, and loked for no suche chaunce. He supposed, also that the Persian power, shoulde throughe thole dyuerse encoûtres wth the Medians,

The historie of Herodian

Romaynes, on euerye syde, be dyspersed abroade, were more faynt, and entre into battayle, wþchoute order. For the Barbariens, vþe not anye mercenarye Souldours, as the Romaynes are accustomed, neyther haue they anpe armie in pþt, ched Campe, where they myghte exercysle theym selues, in seates of warres. But the hole multitude of men, yea ofteyn tymes of women also, doe assemble togethers, at the Kynges commaunde. The whiche multitude, after the warre fynysched, are dysmyssed home agayne, to theyr pþpuate habytacionys, caraynge wþch theym, liche boote of the battayle, as euerye one of theim, for hys and Horses, iust onely in battayle, (as the Romaynes are wonte) but they are euyn from theyr chylde-hooде, brought vp togythers, traded wþch hunting, and bearynge awyayes theyr quyuers of arowes wþch them. Thei never lyghte from theyr Horses, whether thei syghte in Battayle, or hunte wylde beastes.

But thys Polycye of Alexander, albeit at the syntre, it seamed, wþhoute controuersye, to be the besse, yet was it fourthewyth, by fortune, made desyntre of good successe. For the armie, that was commaunded to marche by Armenia, (hauyng wþch greate Payne, and diffycultye, (althoughe the sommer season, caused theyr iorney, to be meatelys tollerable (passed the sharpe mountaynes, and craggye rockes) entred into Media, and there burnte thys vilages, and draue away great booteys, of one thing, and other.

Whan relacion hereof, was made to the Persyan Kyng, he came to rescue the Countrey, wþch as greate a power, as he coulde leue. But he coulde not drþue away the Romaynes from thence, for that the same craggie Countrey, ministred sure footing, and easye passage, vnto the Romayne footemen. And

the

The syxte boke

Fol. lxxi.

the Warboone hoisenen, throughe the steppes, of the Sharpe rockye Mountaynes, hadde a more vneasly trauayle, and laborouse iorneye. There, was it declared, vnto the Persian Kyng, that an other armie of the Romaynes, was entred, into liche borders of the Parthians, as extended towardes the orient. Wherfore, searvinge leasfe the Romaynes, after they hadde Conquered the Parthians, woulde invade Persia also, he leasfe as greate a Garyson behynde hym, as seamed sufficiente, for the defensye of Media, and hym selfe, wþch thole Armie made speeþe haste into thorientall coastes.

The Romayne Armie, marched forwarde verre slowelye, for that no manne resylded theim. Thynkyng, that Alexander wþch the thyde parte of theim, (wherein were the chyfdest menne of warre) was alreadye entred, into the myddes of the Barbariens. And therfore they resydeth them selues: iudgyng, that it was not besse, to make any greate haste, seyng they were nowe in safetys, and knewe the place, wherein they shoulde al togother meete, wþch theyr boote, and Brysoners.

But Alexander deceaued theim. For he neyther came hym selfe, nor broughte anpe Armie for Alexander. Doubtfull it is, whither he so slacked, throughe deceipte feare of putynge hys lyfe in hasarde, in defensye of his Ar. Chempyre, or whither hys Woother deteyned hym myne. at home, throughe womanly fearefulness, and oþuer muche loue of her Sonne.

For, in deade, he bleuynched, and blunted, all hys noble, and valyannte courage, in persuadynge hym, rather to lende other furth to the warres, then stande hym selfe in battayle. The whiche thyng dyde vterlye betraye the Romayne Armie, that was entered into the Barbarous Regions. For the Persian Kyng dyd meete, and sette vppon theim, vncadye, and lookyng for no. 1. y.

liche

The historie of Herodian

suche chaunce, wylth hys hole power, and enclosynge them, as it were, in a nette, dyd bterlye dyscomfyte, and ouerthrowe, euerye personne of them, bingelinge fewe in number, & not able to resyste, so great an Hoste of theyz enemys. Neuerthelesse, at the sytste thet defended stontly, with their Targettes, and weapons, the naked places of theyz bodyes, from the violent shot of arrowes: Accomptyng them selues hapely dealte wylth all, yf wylthoute anye playne battayle, they myghte safely escape, from damage. But when thei had for a lytle space, enclosed them selues wylth theyz Targettes, and were assaultyd lyke vnts a walled Cite, and slayne on every parte, hauynge vnto the ende valyauntly resyssyd, they were murdereyn downe ryghte.

The Ro
mynes
banquis.
Hd.

This was a meruelous calamitie, vnto the Romayns, the lyke whereof, can be in no age remembred, for thei had nowe loste a greate armye, worthy, eyther for Loyalte, or Strengthe, to be compared, vnto anye auncient Hoste, before passed. But the wylched successe of thiese assayres, enhaunsyd the myndes of the Persyan Kyng, wylth hope of greater enterpryses.

The Ar
my war
ed wroth
wyth A
lexander

Wherof when Alexander heard (beynge at that tyme, verye sore sycke, eyther throughe pespuenes of mynde, or els thintemperatnes of the ayre) he toke it verye greuslye, and thole armye, wared wonderfull wrothe, agaynst The mperadure. For thei sayde, that theyz Companions, were betrayyd by hym, throughe hys lyenge, & not performenge of promyse. Then Alexander, beynge impaciente of hys dyssease, and the heate of the ayre, (thole armye also, vexed wylth syckenes, and especiallye the Ilyzians, (who before accusstomed vnto moyse, & coulde ayre, & then leading more largelwe) fell throughe syckenes, into danger of deathe), determined to retourne vnto Antioche: whyther he caused hys Souldours also to come, verye fewe in numbre remaynynge, for that the mooste parte of them, were peryshed, throughe the sharpenes of the Wynter, and Mountaynes.

The

The sixte boke.

Fol. lxxii.

The bandes, whiche were attendaunt vpon hys personne, hym selfe ledde backe vnto Antioche, hauynge loste manye of them also. Therfore, thys matter broughte muche sorowe vnto the armye, and greate dishonour vnto Alexander, Fortune hauynge deceaved hym in all places, and tourned hys entent to none effecte. For a meruaylous numbre of thosse. iii. armes (so perdye, had he deuided them) were destroyed by divers calamities, as syckenes, battayle, and colde. When Alexander was come vnto Antioche, he recovered health, refreshed wylth the temperat ayre there, and aboundinge of water, after the burnyng heate of Mesopotamia, refreshed also hys Souldours, & fortynghe theyz sorowe, wylth geuynghe theym money, (whiche he reckened to be the pryncipall meane, to winne theyz heartes) renewed hys armye, and repayred the same wylth freshe Souldours throughout, as though he woulde ones more leade them agaynst the Persians, yf they proceaded to be troublesome, and desyssyd not from their iuris.

But then was it declared vnto hym, that the Persyan Kyng, hadde dysmyssyd all hys Souldours home to theyz habytacions. For althoughe the Barbariens, seamed to be the Souldours in Battayle, yet throughe often, and sundrye Battayles, foughte in Media, and Parthia, a great parte of them were slayne, the rest whyche remayned, were eyther empayred wylth dysseases, or elles in Skymishes soore wounded. Nevyther were the Romaynes alwylce overcome, but them selues were many times noylome vnto theyz enemys: beyng by none other meane vanquished, then for that they were, fewer in numbre, entrapped.

For when almoste lyke numbre, was on bothe sydes slayne, the rest of the Barbariens, not in strenght and prowesse, but onelye in multitude, seamed to be the better. Whereof, this is sufficient profe, that the Barbariens, in. iii. or. iii. yeres after, fell not againe vnto armes. The whyche when Alexander vnderstoode, he made hys abode styli at Antioche. And being

cl. iii.

The Historie of Herodian.

from thence forwarde, more mercye, & liberal, & forges-
tyng the care of the warres, gaue him selfe to the vng-
luptuous pleasures of the same Cytye. But whiles he
thought, that the Barbartes would frō thence furth,
remayne quiet, or at the leaste wylc, it woulde be a
longe tyme, before they coulde assemble agayne their
power, vneasy to bring together, after they were once
seperated, for that they were rude, and out of order, &
rather a multitude of rual people, then an armye, ha-
ving onely as much vitayle, as euerye man bryngeth
for his presēt necessitie, frō his house: vnwilling also,
to depart frō theyz wiues, children, & habitacions, loo-
furthwith came messengers & letters vnto him, from
the Rulers of Illitria, the which troubled hym woder-
fully, & cast hym into great thought, and perplexitie of
mynde. For they signified, that the Germaynes had
passed ouer the Rheyne, and Danowe, were entered
into the boundes of the Romaine Empire, assayled
the armies, which defended the banckes, & made theyz
rodes through the Countrey, by the Cities, & Villas-
ges, with a great power of men. And that therby the
Illirias, being a nacion borderer, and neighbour vnto
Italye, stode in great hastarde and daunger, wher-
fore, it was requisit, that The Emperour shoulde be ther-
in hys owne person, and brynging all the power he had
wyth hym.

These newes, stake marueilous feare, into Alex-
ander, and doleful sorowe into the Illirian Souldours.
For they perceaued them selues to be afflicted,
wyth two miserable calamities, at one instaunte: ha-
ving fyft enil successe in the warres, against the Per-
siās, & after, hearyng that their frendes were slaine
at home, by the Germaynes. Wherfore, they greatly
grudged against Alexander, as yf by hys cowardyse,
theyz former assayres, had bene betrayed in Thori-
ent, and that now he protracted his remoue, when as
the Northerne causes, earnestly called for hym. Now
Italie: the assayres of the Persians and the Germa-
nes, bryng of vnykē daunger. For those which inha-
bite

The sixte boke.

Fol. lxxiii.

blte the Orient, are sequestred wyth great distaunes
of lande, and See. And thereby do scarselye heare the
name of Italye. But the Illirian nacions, dwellynge
in a smale streyte, and possessing verye lytle grounde, The Set
subiecte to the Romaynes, doo onely make seperati- tuatiō
on betwene Italye, and Germanye. Wherfore, he cau of Illitria
led hys departure to be proclaymed, agaynst hys wyl,
sauyng that necessitie constrayned hym thereto. And ha-
ving left behynde hym, as many men as seemed suffisent, for the tuitiōn of the Romayne lym-
ites, and soztified the Cytyes, and Cattels, with strōg
Garrisons, hym selfe departed spedelye agaynst the
Germains, in the residue of hys hole armie. And ha-
ving wyth spedē eanded his tourneye, he pitched his
Campe, vpon the banckes of the Rheyne, & there made
provisiōn, for al necessaryes, belonging to the warre.

Hytt, he made a Bridge of Shippes and Galleyes,
ouer the Rheyne, and Danowe, that the Romaynes
myghte passe to the other syde, by the same. For thole
twoo are counted the greatest Ryuers of the Northe. Rheine.
Of the wylch, the one passeth by the Germaynes, the Danu-
other, by the Pannonians. And in the Sommer sea- bīa.
son, they are nauigable, wyth a large, and depe chan-
nell. In wynter so harde ouerfroſen, that they are Panno-
ridden vpon, as it were a field. For the Isle of the chan-
nel is so stronge, and harde, that it not onely bea-
reth hooſes of horses, and feete of men, but also, they
whyche come to fetche water there, bryng not wyth
the, so many Cuppes, or Pailes, as they doo Hatchet-
tes, & Mattockes. And when they haue therwith bro-
ke the Isle, they carry the same away, without any ves-
sell, as it were a ſtone. Suche is the nature of thole
ryuers.

Alexander dyd set in Battayle, agaynst the Ger-
maynes, manye Mauritanians, and a greate power
of Archers, whyche he had broughte oute of the Ori-
ent, some of theym brynging people called Osroheni- Osrohe-
ans, the reſſe Parthyān fugytyues, whome he hadde mans.
allured with money vnto him. For thole Souldours
dyd most displeasure, & damage vnto the Germaines.
Because

The Historie of Herodian.

Because the Mauritanians do shooote theyr arrowes from farre, are quycke, nymble, and swiste to skyppe, to and fro. And beynge all Archers, can easelye strike, the bare heades, of the Germaynes, and theyr greate bodyes, as it were an appoynted marke, in a Butte. Often tymes also, they foughte in playne batayle, hande to hande, from whence, the Germaynes, often tymes departed, nothynge Iusserours vnto the Romaynes.

Alexander beynge wyth theise troubles occupied, concluded to sende Dratours vnto them, to entreate of peace, in promysynge them money, and to geue the whatsoeuer they neaded, wyth great aboundinge of treasure. For the Germaynes, are chievelye greadye of money, and often tymes for the same, doo sell theyr peace to the Romaynes. Wherefore Alexander endeavored to bye peace of them, rather then to hasarde the matter, in batayle. But the Romayne Souldours grudged greatlye, that they wasted theyr tyme in bayne, wythoute occasion of atchieuyng any thyng, whereby they myghte shewe theyr valyaunte corage, whyles Alexander, gaue hym selfe to Cartynge (as they sayde) and voluptuousnes, when it was more expedient to reuenge them selues, vpon the Germaynes, and to punysh them, for theyr presumptuous audacite.

There was then in the armie, one Mariminus, of a certayne Village of Thrace, and that the obseruest wyth all, a man halfe Barbarous, whiche in his youthe, had bene a Shepherde, and after, hys yeares beynge increased, for the heughte of hys bodye, and hys myghtye strengthe, was waged for a horsemans. Finallye, Fortune, as it were, leadynge hym by the hande, and goynge before hym, after he had ascended, by all degrees of offyces, in the warre, he aspired vnto the gouernement of the Armie, and Provinces. Thys Mariminus therefore, for hys experte knowledge in warrefare, dyd Alexander ordynre Gouvernour of the youthe, to exercise them, in the feates of warre, and to make them apte, vnto syghte.

And

The syxte booke.

Fo. lxxiiii.

And he omptyng no dylgence, so behaued hym selfe Mariminus in that office, that he gayneſ fauoure, of thole armie: n^o Lorde not onely, instructynge them, in all suche thinges, as of the were dayly to be done, but excecuyng hym selfe, syrl Souldours of all, the deades wyth the presente vſe required. So ours, that he had them, not onely as Scolers, but also Companions of hys prowesse, whom he ioyned vnto hym wyth sundrye gyltes, & all kynde of honour. Wherefore the yonge men, of whom the greatest parte were Pannonianis) beynge topefull of the valeauntnes of Mariminus, did opely speake against Alexander: sayinge that he was yet vnder hys Moothers auctorite, and dyd all thynges after her commaundemente, settynge forwarde the warres vrye slowelye, and with much cowardise. Thei repeted ofte within them selues, the greate myshappe, they had recevued in thorienta throughe his delayes, and reprehended, that he had done nothyng valeauntly agaynst the Germaynes. Wherefore being prone of their nature to chaunge of thinges, greued with so longe contynuance of regiment (whereof they receyued lytle lucre) for that all ambition was longe before abolished) and assurdeſtlye trusyng that some other Prynce which shoulde attayne vnto the Soueraignetie, without lokynge for it woulde bestowe some more giftes, and honoure vpon them, thei concluded to murder Alexander, and afterwardes to create Mariminus Emperoure beynge their Companion in armes, and all other exercyſes, and by his skyl in warfarre, moſte apte for the warre presently in hande. Wherefore hauing by sundry bandes assembled into the fielde, when Mariminus came amogges them to instructe the yonge Souldours, they clothed hym with purple, and saluted hym as Emperour. Doubtfull it is, wether he were ignoraunte of the drypeſte, or els made prouie vnto the matter before. At the fyſt he refuſed it, and reſected the purple. But when he ſaw the me of armes drawe furth their ſwoordes, threatening to kyll him, wishing rather the daunger to come, then the peryll presente, he toke the honoure vpon hym: protestynge, that althoughe the ſame for-

W.i. tunc

tune, were erste by drazmes, and visions, shewed unto him, yet was he nowe unwillingly enforced by them to receiue it, onely because he would obey their myndes. Then he wylled them, to appoynte all thynges as they wold them selues, and taking their wepons, in preventing the rumor of this matter, gote slea Alexander, who was ignozaunt of all that was done, that thereby his Souldiours, & the Garde of hys person, beyng with the lodeyne chaunce dismayed, shold either willingly assent vnto them, or els beyng vntreidy, & loking for no suche happe, shoulde mangre theyz heades, be brought in subiectiō. Then after he had enflamed their good willes towardes him, in dublynge their wages, and promising to geue them greate rewardes, & to pardon all their punyshmentes, he ledde them all vnto Alexander's Pavillion, incōtinently, for that it was not farre distant fro thence. When thiese thinges were declared vnto Alexander, he was greatly dismayed vnto the noueltie thereof. So that he ran out of his Tent, as a mad man, weeping, & trebling, now callyng Maximinus desloyall, and perjured person, with reckening of the benefytes, which him selfe had bestowed vpon him: and then, accusing the yonge Souldiours, which neglecting their othe, wold enterprize so perniciously, that facinerouse facte. And fynally, he offered to give them what thei woulde desyre, and amende suche thinges as were amisse. Then the Souldiours which apartayned to hys Garde of hys person, making noyfull acclamaciōs vnto him, promised to defende him, with all their might and power. When the night was ones passed, and the dare began to dawe, certaine of the Souldiours, brought worse vnto him, that Maximinus was at hande, for that they myght see the dusse rayzed, and heare the noyse of a greate multitude not farre of. Wherefore Alexander came agayne into the fielde, & called togēthers his Souldiours, beseeching them to arde, and defende him, whome them selues had brought vp, and during whose raigne, by the space of. viii. yeres, they had lived without discention. Then hauyng moued them

them all with compassion, he willed them to arme them selues, & stande in ordre of batayle, to resyll their enemis. But the Souldiours (although thei had before promised ayde vnto their Prince) dyd not wstaning shrinke away, by lytle, and little. Some of thei required the Captaine of the Garde, other of Alexander's frendes to be put to deathe: alledginge that they were the occasion of this Commocio. Other of them accused hys Moother, for that she was a coueteous woman: who in heaping, and hordyng of money, and throughe her pynchyng, sparyng, and greedy keaping, from the Souldiours, had broughte Alexander into dysdayne wyth them all. Thus stode they talkyng, and moued not as yet. But as soone as tharmp of Maximinus was in syghte, and after he had encoraged them, to forsayke a fylthy woman, and a weake yonge man, whiche lyued as yet vnder his Moother's commaundemente, and toynē them selues vnto a stonge, and valaunte man, theyz companion in Armes, and exercysed contynually wyth them, in feates of warre, furthwith, thei all togetheres reuolted fro Alexander, and with one assente saluted Maximinus as Emperour. Then Alexander fledde backe agayne into his Pavillion, trembling, and halle besydes hym selfe, and embrasyng his Moother, and (as it is repozed) blamig her for that he suffered this calamity, for her sake, he aboade there, loking for the murderer.

Now Maximinus, after he was created Emperour by thole Arme, gaue in charge to the Tribune, and Capitaines, the murderinge of Alexander wyth hys Alexander, Moother, and all other whiche shold make anye reuider & hys sytance. Thei furthwith entering by bvolence into Moother the Pavillion, slew both Alexander, and his Moother, & theyz with hys frendes, and evrye noble man, excepte a frendes fewe, whiche a lytle before had made shyste for thei slayne. selues by fleeing away, and were hyd in corners. All the whiche, being shortly after appreched, Maximinus dyd put to deathe. This ende of lyfe had Alexander, with hys Moother, when he hadde by the space of. viii. yeres reigned, withoute any complainte of the Citezins, yea without any bloodsheddyng.

The Historie of Herodian

For detesting cruytpe, and murder he permitted no man to suffer, withoute he were by iudgemente condemned, so muche was he addicted to gentle beneuolence. So that yf the coueytous, and greadye Moo-ther, had not with fylthy couetise defamed her Sonne, there coulde nothyng haue bene wantyng, or wylled to be, in hys gouernement of The myze.

The Argumente of the Seuenth Booke of Hero- dian.



The Begynninge of the seuenth Booke maketh mencion of Maximinus Crueltye, which passed ouer, and made warre vpon the Germanes. And at his returne to Rome, oppressed the people, wth greevous exactions, and commytted much sacrilege, whi che caused muche hurley burley amonges the people. How the nacion of Aphrique rebelled, and made Gordianus Emperoure, who was vanquylshed by Capellianus, Gouvernour of Mauritania. And after Gordianus deathe, howe the Senate elected Maximus, and Albinus, and with them yonge Gordianus. The audacite of Gallianus foloweth, and the myschiese that ensued therepon.

(?) (?)
(?) (?)

The seuenth booke of the

Historie of Herod-
ian.



E haue in the former booke, at length declared, after what sort, Alexander behaued him selfe, duryng the. viii. yeres of his raygne. After whose death, Maximinus, hauyng obtainede the myze, and regemente, of the myze, altered the estate of all thynge, and abused verye cruellye, hys obtainede power, so that frome a Gentle Gouernemente, he endeuored to chaunge it vnto cruell tyrannie. For perceiving him selfe to be odious vnto all men, bycause he syrste of all other, had aspyred vnto that Fortune, frō a base estate, besydes that, beynge a swill Barbarous of maners, as by nature greadye of bloudshed, he endeuoured chieflye, to establishe the myze vnto hym, through crueltye, fearing least he shold be had in contempte of the Senate, and all other Romaines, whyles not hys present Fortune, but the obscurenes of hys byrthe, was specially noted in hym. For it was openlie knownen vnto all men, that he had been a shepherde in the Mountaynes of Thrace, and receaved amonges the syngle, and base Souldyours of that region, for the greatnes, and strengthe of hys bodye, and nowe exalted vnto the Romayne myze, Fortune (as I myghte saye) leadynge hym by the hande.

Wherefore, syrste of all, he rooted oute of the Senate house, all the frendes and Councelours of Alexander, of the whyche some he dimissed to Rome, other some he depryued of theyz offyces, acculyng their former administration therein. This dyd he, to the entente he myghte be alone, in the armye, hauyng no man of the nobilitye nyghe hym, but wythoute the reuerence of anye luch, as in a strong Fortresse, exercis hys tyranny. Then dyd he expell oute of the Imperiall

The historie of Herodian

perial palisce, al the Seruauntes of Alerader, whom he had by so many yeares retayned in seruice, and did put some of them to death, fearing treason, because he perceaued them dolefully to lament the death of Alexander. But his tyranney was more augmented, thorough the opening of a certayne couspiracy agaynst hym, wherin many of the Captaynes, & the whole Seneate, were confedered.

There was a certayne man of the nobilitie, whiche had been Consul, named Magnus. The same was accused unto Maximinus, that he had intended treason against him, & persuaded the Souldours, to translate the Empyre unto him. Thys counsayle was supposed to be sache. Maximinus had made a Brydge ouer the ryuer, to passe agaynst the Germayns, haayng a greate appetite (after he had gottē thempyre) vnto warlike affayres. For being erected vnto Thempyre, through the huge quantitie of his bodie, his strenght, and skill in warfare, he endeououred with open deades, to confirme his same opinion of the souldours, to prave, therby, that the feare, cowardise, and slouth of Alexander, in warlike exercisles, was iustly by him condempned. Wherfore, he omitted nothynge that appertayned to the exercite of the men of warre. And beyng hym selfe daylye in armes, dyd therewith greatlye prouoke the courage of the Souldours.

After the aforesayde Brydge was synched, he determined, to passe ouer into Germayne. But then it was reported, that Magnus had entised a great number of Souldours, who excelled the other in prowes, especially of those, vnto whō the custody of the Brydge was committed, that asone as Maximinus were passed vnto the other syde of the riuier, they shold thowdowne the brydge, exclude him from all retourne, and therby betray hym vnto the Germains. For h̄ depth, and breadeth of the ryuer was sache, that it seamed impossible for hym to gette ouer agayne, especiallye, because there was no kynde of vessell, on the further shore. Sache was the ramor of thys enterpryse. But Uncertayne it is, whether the same were truelye reported

The seventh booke.

Fo. lxxvii.

ported, or ys forged of a purpose. For it is hard, to give a resolute Judgemente therein, bycause that wþch oute anye tryall, answere, or sentence, as manye as were onelye suspected, were putte vnto death.

At the same time, there began a great commotion, of the Ostrohenian Souldours also. For they beyng verye sorrowfull for the deathe of Alexander, and by happe, meatyng wþ one of hys frendes, named Quarcius (who a lytle before hadde been dimissed by Maximinus frant the Campe) tooke hym agaynst hys wyl, when he loked for no suche matter, elected hym to ther Capayne, clothed hym wþ Purple, carped the lyre before hym, and so adornd wþ pernicious honours, exalced hym vnto the dignitie of Emperoure.

The whyche man, shortelye after, sleappuge in hys Pavillion, was by one of hys owne Companions, and (as it is supposed) hys frende, trayterously murdere. The same was named Macedonius, whyche had been before, Ruler of the Ostrohenians, and at that present, was fyfthe Author unto them, of revoltinge from Maximinus. And, althoughe there were no cause of grudge betwene him, and Quarcius, yet dyd he thus murder hym, whome hym selfe had fyfthe compelled to become Emperour.

Then thynkyng to shewe Maximinus some great pleasure, he caried vnto hym the head of Quarcius. But Maximinus, albeit he were glad of that facte, for that hys enemye was rydde oute of the waye, yet dyd he putte vnto extreme deathe thys Macedonius, (whych loked after some greate rewarde, and hoped to receave great thankes for hys traualye) because he was Author of the rebellion, and murderer of one, whiche hym selfe had induced, maugre hys head vnto that mischiefe, and had been false vnto the man, whiche had mosse aspaunce in hym.

These causes therfore, dyd exasperate the mynde of Maximinus, and kyndled hys furpe, beyng alreadys of hys owne nature, ouer prone vnto crueltye.

W. iii.

He

Quarcius.

Macedonius.

The historie of Herodian

He was besydes, horrible of visage, & of so huge, and myghty stature, that none of the most valiaunt Grekes, or mosse warlyke Barbariens myghte be compared unto hym.

When these thynges were thus set in order, he gathered together the whole Armye, passed wythoute feare ouer the Brydge, and made Battayle vpon the Germanynes. There folowed hym a wonderfull nomber of men, almosste all the power of the Barbariens, and wyth theym verye manye Mauritanian Slynghers, and Archers. There folowed hym besydes, the Osrohenians, and Armenians, the one nacion beinge subiecte vnto the Romaynes, the other associated in frendshyppe wyth them, they were accompanied wyth as manye Parthians, as beyng hyred or fugitvues, from theyr natvue countrey, or els taken in the warres, serued the Romaynes.

Thys multytude of people, was fyffe leuyed by Alexander, & then augmented, and exercised, by Mariminius. The Slynghers, and Archers, seamed verye profitable in the warre agaynste the Germanynes, because they coulde easelie fryske theym selues furthwyth, into sure defensice.

Mariminius beyng entred wythin hys enemys lande, and fyndyngge no man to resist hym (for all the Germanynes were fledde) pyllled and foraged the countrey (the Corne beyng then ryple) and permitted the Souldyours to burne, and destroye, all the vilages. And in deade, the Townes and houses there, are verye muche subiecte to daunger of fyre.

For amonges the Germanynes, the Buyldynge wyth Stone, and Tyle, is verye rare and scarce. But wyth great peices of Tymber set in the earthe, and joyned together in thycke woodes, they make (as it were) tabernacles. Mariminius then goynge forwardes, in wassynge the Countrey, sackynge the corne, and distributyng the Cattell, whiche was taken amonges the Souldyours, founde not as yet, anye of hys enemys. For they had abondoned all the fielde

The seventh boke

Fol. lxxviii.

fielde, playne, Countrey, and all places, destitute of trees, and hydde theym selues couertly in the woodes, and marshes, that thei myght there syghe, and with sodeyne assaultes, traude their enemys: because the chickenesse, and rygh growing togither of the trees, seemed to become a great impediment vnto the arrowes, and darcies, of heyr enemys. And thei thought, that the depth of their marshes, and Dooles, would be daungerouse vnts the Romaynes, for that thei wers ignoraunte of the passages, and Countrey. But vnto them selues, very easye, and profitable, because they wading daili through them, vp to the knees, perfectly knewe, whiche were the passable foordes, & whiche vnpossible to get ouer. And truly, the Germanynes are verye cunnyng in swymming, as men, which onely swymme, and bathe them selues in Ryuers. In these places therfore, was the battayle begon, where fyffe of all the Romayne Emperour enterpryse the conflycte very valiauntly. For when thei were come vnto a greate, & broade Maryshe, within the whiche, the Germanynes had retayned them selues, the Romaines, beinge a laerde to pursue their enemys, Mariminius fyffe entered vpon a great Courser, into the Maryshe (wher his horse fouldered to y belye) & slewe with great māhode, many of the Barbarous people, whiche resysted. Wherefore the resydue of thame, beyng pricked wyth shame, yf they shoulde forlake their Emperour, nowe syghtyng for them, aduentured theim selues also into the Maryshe. And then were there slayne, many of eyther parte, but so, that there was no Barbarien leste a lyue, the Romayne Emperour syghtyng mosse valiauntly. Whereby the Maryshe beyng fyllled wyth deade carcases, and the lake beyng mungled wyth bloode, caused it to seame, that thys foote Battayle was foughte wyth syopes vpon the water.

This victory, wyth other hys stoute, and myghty factes, he not onely sygnysyd vnto the Senate, and people of Rome, by letters, but also beyng printyd in a great Table, caused it to be publyshed before the

X. l.

Coopte,

The historie of Herodian

Cooze, that the Romaynes myghte not onely heare of hys valyaunte deades, but also haue theim perfectly expressed before theyz eyes.

The same Table, with the rest of hys honours, the Senate after wardes pullyd downe, and abolysched. There were manye other skyrmishes, and batayles foughthen, wherein hym selfe, throughte hys syrte gy-
uynge the onsette, and manfull fyghtynge) gate ever the price, and renowne. Then he retourned, against the wynter season, into Pannony, wryth manye pny-
soners, and greate boortye of Catayle. And wynter-
ryng wrythin the Cyrye of Syzium, (whiche is the greatest Cyrye of that Countrey) he prepared all necessaries, for hys dyng, agaynst the sprynge time: threatynge, wholy to subdue all the Barbarouse na-
cions of the Germaynes, eue to the Ocean. The whi-
che thing, it seemed, he woulde assuredly byngyng to
passe, such a one was he, in the affaires of warrefare,
and shuld haue obtayned a wonderfull glory throught
hys factes, yf he hadde not bene more outragious
to hys owne subiectes, then to hys enemyes. But
to what purpose, are the Barbarous slaine, yf much
more murder, be commytted wrythin the Cyrye self of
Rome, and the nacions subiecte therunto: or what
auayleth it to haue plentye of Captiues, and pny-
ses of beastes, yf by hys conquestes, and fortune, the Ro-
mayne theim selues, be dyspoyle of all they haue.

For, not onely free lybertye, but also entryng, was
givynge, vnto pernicious promoters, to accuse, and cy-
cumente wryth fraude, whome thei woulde. Pea, and
to renewe (yf neade were) faultes before done, by
mens Auncelours, some of them vntowen, and vnto
hardes of, butyll that present instaunt. Neithir was
there any man detected of anye offence, but the same
was furthwyth condempned, and all his goodes con-
fiscate. Wherby, a man myghte daylye see, dy-
uerse whiche before were wonderfull ryche, and wel-
thye) nowe begge theyz breade: So greate was the
reuytyle of hys Tyranye, whyles he dystributed
money

Hirniū.

The erac-
tions of
Marini-
nus.

The seventh booke

Fol. lxxix.

money continually, amonges the menne of warre.
His eares besydes were open vnto all complayntes,
so that he had no regard, to any mas age, or dignitie.

For manye Captaines of armes, Gouernours of prouinces, wryth dyuerse that hadde bene
Counslles, and for theyz merites tryumphed, being
ones for anye sondre trifle, or lyghte cause accused, he
caused furthwyth to be appreched: and puttynges
theim in Chariottes alone, wrythout any Seruaunte
attendyng upon theim, compelled theim, to come
oute of the Calle, and Weste (yf the chaunce so hap-
pened) and oute of the Southe also, vnto Pannony,
where hym selfe soioured. And there spoylynges
theim of all theyz substancialle, and entreatynges theim
wryth mosse shamefull sclauders, he afflycted theim
wryth death, or banyshementes. But as one,
or two, suffered thiese domages, and the layde cala-
mity pasted not theyz lynnage, the common people, ly-
tle regarded it. For the aduerse chaunces of Kyche,
and welthy menne, were not onely of the Commons,
neglected, but also manye of theim, of a frowarde
mynde, and peruerse wyll, in desperte of the Kyche
men, were verye gladde wryth the same theyz myse-
ryes.

But after that Marinius, hadde thus broughte The sa-
hnto extreme pouertye, the famylies of many noble, crileges
and famouse menne, reckenyng theim of no value, of Mar-
i and but tryffles towardes the satysfycnge of hys out- nius.
ragious couertousnes, he tourned hys mynde vnto
the Robberye, and spoylynges, of the common Trea-
soye.

For what so euer money hadde bene before
layde vpp, for the Common prouision of Corne, or
what so euer Ryches remained, to be dystributed
amonges the people, wryth all suche Treasoure
as serued to the deckynge of the Theaters, and
gorgiouse settynge furthe of festiuall Pompes, and
playes, the same euerye iore, he adiudged to hym-
selfe.

Wesydes

E.g.

The historie of Herodian

Welsydes that, the gyftes of all the Temples, the Sta-
tues, and honours, of all the Goddes, and famouse
men, wþt what so euer publycke worke, Ciyyll or-
namentes, or matter, whyche seamed conueny-
ente to make money of, were put to the fyre. Whi-
che thing dyd chieslye gnatwe, and here the hartes of
the people, i caused, as it were, a cowmō mourning,
saying, that wþthoute warre, or battayle, the Cypte
was lyke to be assaulted, & taken, so that many of the
people auentured to resotte hym, and to defende the
Temples, wþshynge rather to be slayne before than-
ters of the immortall Goodes, then to see theyz Cou-
trey destroyed. And hereby chiesly, did the myndes of

Rebel'is
& bittter
Curses a
gainst
Marini-
nus.

the Commo people, beginne to grudge against him,
throuhoute all the Cyptes of Thenipyre. Neþher
were the Souldiours the selues very glad wþt it, for
that theyz neyghbours, and kynsolke rebuked them,
and imputed to theyz faulce, that Maximinus dyd

thus behaue hym selfe. Thiese enormities, therefore,
beynge of no small importaunce, dyd prouoke the pe-
ple to hatred, and rebelliō. But hitherbþto thei med-
led not, saue onely wþt wordes, callynge bþpon the
Goddes, whome Maximinus had offended, for that
there was none durste take bþpon hym, to reuenge
the cause: bntyll that after thre yeres eande of hys
Keygne, bþpon a lyghte occasyon (as the assayres of
Tyrtauntes, are waueringe, and subiecte to chaunge)
the Affricans, fyfste enterpryzed to fall to Armes,

The Go-
uernour
of Affri-
cane.

and rebellyon, and this was the cause. There was a
certaine Liuetenaunt in Cartilage, who wanted no-
thynge, that appertayned to extreme furþe, and ou-
ragious Tyranny. The same crepte into his Prin-
ces fauour, by condēpning of men, & torturing of mo-
nei. For Marimin loued the most of al other, whō he

knew to be of his own secte & factio. So y, whosoeuer
therfore had the charge of Theperozs treasour, whe-
ther thei were good me (which very sealdome hap-
pned) or deposed frō their office, or elles feared wþ the pre-
sent peryll, beynge iþrall of hr's unsatiable auarice
dyd (alþough he unwillingly) folow, & accompany þ rest.

This

The seventh boke. Fol. lxxviii.

Thys aforesnamed Liuetenaunte of Affrica, ha-
uyng violentlye commyted, manye greate enormi-
ties, dyd also compasse, to eracte moneys furþwþt,
of certayne noble, and ryche yonge men (whome he
had by fraude circumuerted wþt condempnation)
and to depryue the of all theyz Patrimonye, & ryches,
which theyz Auncellours had left them. With whiþ
thynge, the yonge men beyng incensed, dyd in deade
promise to paye the same, demaundynge thre dayes
respyte, for the payment.

And in the meane whyle, conspyzyng together,
as manye as had alreadye suffered, or feared hereaf-
ter to suffer affliction, commaunded the yonge men
theyz seruautes, to come from theyz Villages, and
Farmes, with Clubbes, and Axes, vnto them.
They executyng their Maisters commaundemen-
tes, came all together before dawe lyghte, into the Cy-
pte, hydyinge vnder theyz Garmentes, such weapons,
as in that sydayne tumulte, they had gotten.

There was assembled, a wonderfull greate num-
ber of men. For in Affrica beyng it selfe greateþy re-
plenished wþt people, there were at that tyme, ma-
nye Labourers, and Husbande men also. After the
daye appeared: he yonge men, commaunded theyz ser-
uautes to wayte neare vpon them, as though he they
were some of the Lowne people, and not to shewe
theyz weapons, or begynne anye violence, bntyl they
saw the menne of Armes, or elles of the common
people, assaulte theym to reuenge the facte, whyche
they woulde shortlye commyte. They theym sel-
ues, hydyinge theyz Daggers in theyz bolomes, went
into the Liuetenautes house, saynyng he they woulde
speak wþt hym, touchyng the payment of the mo-
ney, and furþwþt soðeynlye there slewe hym, when
he suspected no suche casaultye.

Then bys Souldiours, drewe furþe the theyz swor-
des, and endeoured to reuenge the murder. But the
Husbandemen, and Laborers, ranne immediatlye
to the byckerwage, and there stoutlye foughte for their
Maisters, and easelyley constrained all theyz enemys

X.iii.

The Go-
uernour
of Affrik
slayne.

Gordianus chosen Emperour by the yngre mē.

to turne their backes, & fle. Whē hē enterprise was after this wise attchiued, yong mē, hauing so desperatly set vpō hē matter, rekened one only helpe to remaine for them. That is, if thei heaped vpō this late committed mischiosus act, a moze heinous offece. Wherfore thei determined to associat in the peryl unto them, the greater hour of the Province, & to induce y mūndes of the people, vnto rebellio, y whiche thei knew to be wished for, of the al, through hē hatred of Maximinus, but as yet prohibited frō it, through feare. Wherefore, in the deape of the night, thei went w all y multitude, to the Proconsuls house. The same was Gordianus, whs obtained y office, whe he was. iii. score yeres old, and had been gouernour of many Provinces before, and approued in sundry weyghty affaires. And therefore thei thought, that he would, without difficultie, take y rule of thempyre vpō him, as y fynall eande of his former dignities, & that he shoulde be a Prince gratesfull vnto y Senate, & people of ROME. For that, besides his noblenes of byrth, he had by diuers honors, as by steps, ascended vnto the regyment of Thempyre. Now it happened, y the very same day that these thinges were in doing, Gordianus remained within hys owne house, hauing deferred his busynes vntill an- other time, & suspended for then the administratio of all thynges. The yonge men wþt their swordes being accōpanied w a great number of people, repulſed his Porters, & entred w force into the house, and foud him resting him self vpō his Bed, where thei thoged about the old mā, clothed him w purple, & saluted him w imperiall honors. But he beinge astonied w the sō- bain chaſſe, & supposing it to be a deceite, wrought of purpose against him, let him selfe fall to the ground frō his bed, beseeching thei, to haue compassiō vpō an old mā, whiche had never offendē thei, and to obserue theyr trueth, and allegaunce, towards their Prince. Then whiles thei thus perseuered, holding their swordes in their handes, & whiles Gordianus, partly throughe feare, partly through ignorance, knewe not what the matter ment, or what was the cause of so sodayne for- tune,

The seuenth boke.

tune, one of the yongmen, whiche excelled the rest in nobilitie, & eloquēce, hauing comaued the vnto silēce, holding his sword by the Wytes, spake after this sort. The woruldest, thother doubtful, & of uncertain eand, thou must des of one this day chose one. That is, either to preserue vs, & thy self, & coēceue as good hope, as we already have, or els the vnts without delay, suffer death by our handes. And if thou chose the better, the are there many occasions of good hope. For thou shalt rid out of the waye Maximinus, of all the wozde abhored, as a pestiferous plague, of cruell tyraunye, & adde vnto thy life (whiche thou hast hitherto vrtuously led) famous glory & renoume, obtayninge of the Senate, and people of ROME eter- nal honour, & perpetual praise. But if thou reiect it, & deny to conspire with vs, we wyll out of hand put the to death: and our selues also (yf neade be) wyll accom- pany the in dyng. For we haue enterprised a greater matter, then that we can be safe without desperation. The minister of tyraunye is dead, and hath receaved condigne punyshement for hys cruelty, beinge a lytle earste, slayne wþt oure handes. Wherfore, yf thou wyl consent wþt vs, and become partaker of oure perylles, thy selue shalce obtayne the Emperore. And then the faulce, whiche we haue committed, shall be reputed, more worthye, prayse, then punyshemente.

Whyles the yonge man spake theiſe wor- des, the rest of the multyptude, beyng vnpacient of stafe, or tarivnge (seyng all the Cyryzyns whiche had hearde of the matter, were assembled, toge- ther) wþt one accordē, pronounced Gordianus Em- perore.

Then he (albeit he had before refusid it, and excused Gordianus selue by hys age, yet beyng of nature ambitious and desyrous of glorie) dyd wþtouthe resiſtance, take the honoure vppon hym: myndyng, rather to enter into the daunger to come, then the peryl present. Besi- des that, he thoughte not good, to refuse it, seyng his age was come to that perfection, but (if the case so re- quired) to dy the Emperore of ROME.

Wherfore

Libia.
Affrikes

Wherfore, incotinently after hys, al Affrique began to rebell, and manye Cptyes, pulled downe the honours of Maximinus, and erected Images of Gordianus. And hym they named of theym selues, Africani. For those whyche inhabite the Northe Coste of Lybpa, are called in the Romayne tonge Aphryques.

Item Gordianus hauyng soiourned v. dayes Tisornum at Tyldram, in the whyche Cytye, all these chynges were done, and posseslyng the name, and apparell of Carthage, remoued vnto Carthage, that in the same ry- thynge, beyng verye great, and muche frequented, all of Car- brynges myghte be ordered, as in Rome. For Car- thage, in haboundaunce of rychesse, resorte of people, bygnesse or greatnesse of compasse, geyng oneyle prehemi- thage. Egypte, for the seconde place. Cythher folowed Go- dyanus, all the pryncypall Pompe, wth all the Soul dyours in those partyes, and the Cytye yonge men, of tall, & comely stature, like in similitude vnto them at Rome, whyche garde the Emperours person, with Laurell roddes in theyz handes, whereby the Pryn- ces are discerned from priuate personnes. There was fyre also, accordyng to the usage, caryed before hym, so that Carthage, for a small space, dyd represence the forme and Fortune of Rome.

From thence, Gordianus sent manye letters, vnto euerye Sagistrate of Rome, and to the noble men of the Senate, amonges whome there were verye manye hys frendes and alyes.

He wrote bysydes, vnto the wholle Senate and peo- ple of Rome, sygnifying vnto them, the fauour of the Affrycans towardes hym: and therwithall accusing the cruytyle of Maximinus, whyche he perceaneed to be detested of al men. Hym selfe vsed al gentlenes, and assabilityle. For he punyshed wth eryle, all vntrewe Promoters, and Accusers, and vnto theym whyche were vnyghitously therefore condemned, he gaue free lybertye, to defende theyz owne. Pea, he resfored those whyche tofore were banyshed, to theyz natyue Countreyes agayne, & prouyded to geue to the Soul- dyours

dours, more rewardes, and to dystribuite amonges the people moxe gystes, then any man before him had done. He brought to passe also, that Wyttalian, y^r Lord Ultalia, greate Maister of Maximinus houscholde, a ma out- ragious and cruell, but mosse deare, and welbeloued of Maximinus, was layne within the Cyttie iesle of Rome. For suspecting, that that man, in relysing of hys enterpryses, wold with feare cause other alio to turne from hym, he sente the Lyuetenant of the Pro- nince, a stoute yonge ma, stronge of body, of floury- thynge age, and ready to attempte any peryll for hys sake, with certayne Capitaines, and dyuerse Soul- dyours in hys company: vnto whome he delyuered let- ters sealed wth two Seales, by the whiche Empe- rours vsed to sygnysre their priuys Couelles, and af- fayres. Thise he commaunded to entre into the Cy- tye before dayel yghte, and (whyles Wyttalian were busied in hys accustomed affayres) to go vnto him in to the Chamber, where he was wonte to enquyre of the secret thinges, whiche appertayned to the safegard of hys Prince: shewynge hym, that thei had secrete letters vnto him from Maximinus, and woulde, all o- ther set a parte, commune with him, of thinges belon- ging to the Princes person, in declaring vnto him the Emperours mynde. And then, whyles he were occu- pied in the loking vpon the Seales, thei shuld murder hym, wth their daggers, hydde in their bosomes of purpose. All whiche enterpryse, was atchyued as he wryshed. For before the dauning of the dawe (when as he accustomed to come furthe) thei shuld Ultalianus almoste alone, w a fewe onely standinge aboute him) because some were nat as yet come vnto him, some o- ther, after their salutaciō done, were departed before it was day ligh. Wherefore, finding hym at leasure, and a fewe standing before the Chamber doore, after thei had declared thise thinges whiche we before spake of) thei were easly let in, & haung deliniered their letters whiles he diligently regarded the sygnettes thereof, The dea- dwe out their daggers, & slew hym. And then depar- the of Ulti- led out of the Chamber, wth their daggers naked in talianus.

Z. l. theyz

The Historie of Herodian

their handes, every man giuing them place, and way to passe. For thei supposed, it had bene done by Mariminus commaundement, for that he was woon't often tymes so to do by them, whome a lytle before, he most entierly loued. Then thei going through the streate, which hight Sacia via, shewed furthe the Epistle of Gordian vnto the people, and delyuered letters from hym, vnto the Counsilles the selues, and other Magistrates of Rome, spradding by rumors abzoad, that Marimyne was already slayne.

The which thing being ones disbulged, immediatly al the people ranne through the streates, fr̄ one place, to an other, lyke men distracte of their right senses. For as the common people, are in every place, vncoustante, & prone to newe chaunges, so are the Romaine people, chiesly, more loauering, and bristledaste, then mayne all other: beynge knypte, of a greate, and dypuerse, multitude of straungers.

Then were the Images of Marimyne, with the reste of his honours, furthwith pulled downe. And the hatred agaist hym, before, through the feare hydren, thei did now, after a free lybertie gotten, and no man prohibyting them, powre, and spryte oute. The Senate also, beynge often assembled (albeyt they had no certayne reporte of Mariminus estate, yet coniecturing by the present fortune, the rumour to be true) did abolyshe all his honours, and pronounced Gordianus, & his Sonne, Emperours.

Gordianus Immediately after that done, all Promoters, eyther his & his flede away, or elles were slayne, by those, whom thei had before offred. The Sollicitors, vespdes of Mariminus, and suche as late in iudgemente, in the mirtaking of his Tyranny, were by the common people, draiven through the streates, and thrown into the common syrkes of the Citye. In this bypose, there were many innocentes slayne. For every leue persoun entered violently into the haule of hys creditor, or aduersarie in the lawe, or of any other, whome vpon never so lyghte an occaſion he hated, and ther dispiled him of hys goodes, and murdered him. Thus vnder colour

The seventh booke. Fol. lxxxiii.

coloure of lyberty, and pretence of peace, the very dea des of Cyuil warre were committed, so that there was slayne with the diate of a clubbe, Sabinus the Lyttenaunte of the Citye, whiche endeououred to appease Sabinus this busye tumulte. Thise thinges dyd the peoplie. slayne.

After the Senators hadde ones entered into thys peryl, thei dyd, through the feare of Marimine, sollicite in all thei coulde, the Provinces to rebellyzone.

Wherfore, ther were Ambassadores chosen of the chieffest of the order of Senators, and Knyghtes, the whiche were sente vnto the gouernours of the Princes, with letters, wherein was at length, declared the mynde of the Senate, and people of Rome, whiche exhorted the sayde Kulers to haue a specyal regarde to their native countrey, to defendethe Coorte of Rome, and perswade the nations vnder them, to contine we in their allegiaunce, towarde the Romayne people, whose dominion ouer them, and auncient bonde of amitie with them, was by their progenitours longe agone, ordyned. Many of those Gouernours, receaued the Ambassadores very greatlye, and enduced the people to resolute: the which was easlye brought to passe, in so greate hatred was Mariminus had wyth every man. Thei therefore, hauing oute of hande slayne all suche Magistrates amonges them, as were of Marimines parte) did all togithers turne vnto the Romaynes. Pee were there a fewe Kulers, whiche either flied the Ambassadores, y cam vnto them, or elles sent them vnder sure custody vnto Marimyne, who with moost cruel tormentes, dyd put them to deathe. This was the mynde, this was the wyll, of the Citye of Rome. The whyche hurley butley, beynge reported vnto Mariminus, althoughe he were sozowfull wythall, yet dyd he sayue, that he vitterly contempned it, and the fyrt, and seconde daye, remayned quiete, wythin hys owne houle, consultinge wyth hys secrete friendes, aboute the same mater. And althoughe the hole armee, and people of that Regyon knewe, and vnderstode, all thys busynesse, and were prone also

The Historie of Herodian

also to renolte, sturred with the boldenes, and neuel-
tive of so greate enterpryses, yet dyd every man holde
his peace, taking bpon him to be ignorant of the case
so greatly was Maximinus scarcd amounges the, that
nothing was hidden from hym. For he dyd not onely
herke vnto every mans woyles, but also, watch, and
pke, vpon the gesture of their faces, and handes.

The thirde daye, he caused all the Souldours, to as-
semble in a playne before the City, and there him selfe
sitting in a highe thron, reherced oute of a booke, an
oration, his by frendes composed, and peined before,
thus.

The ora-
tion of
Maximi-
nus.

I know verily, that I shal declare vnto you, a thing
strange, & incredible, but (as I my selfe suppose) not
worthy so muche wonder, as laughter. Thei are not
the Germanes, so often vanquished, that do mous-

warre against you, and your valiaunes, neyther the
Sarmatians, whiche dayly treat wth vs for peace
The Persys also, which ones wasted Mesopotamia
dothe nowe ware wyse, in quietinge theim selues,
Mesapo-
tamie. wthyn their owne houses: beyng taughte, partely
wth poure valiaunte powres in warrefare, partely
with the enpryses, whiche I haue archiued: where-
with, thei became aquaynted, when I had the gouer-
nance of the Arme, for their passage, ouer the Ry-
uers.

But (lesse I shold decyne rou with a thynge moze
woorthye laughter,) the Cartaginenses are become
madde, and wth an infotunat olde man, whiche do-
geth through the extremite of age, I doute whether he
were perswaded, or compelled therunto thei do, as it
were, in a stage entelude, play, and take the Princi-
pality vpon them. For to what Arme do thei truste,
when as Bergantes, and Catchpolles, doe supplye
the Proconsulles coune amounges theim: what wea-
pons wyl thei heare, scynghe thei haue none but smale
speares, to hunte wilde beastes withal: And in seade
of warlike exercisles, thei vse dausting, & singeing of Val-
lades, & Garroles. Let not y thinges which are repozed
to

The seventh booke.

Fo. lxxxiii.

to be done wthyn the City of Rome. Wshmar you to
that Itali an is fayre, by vnsytle, hewe vnsytle the
myndes of the Romanes be, and howe prompt they
courage is, to ryle to make shentes, it is manifest vnto
you. If these ii. o. iii. armed men, they thrisse one an-
other forwarde to the daunger, in spuryng one an-
other: and fleinge awaie, euerie man from hys owne
daunger, they neglecte the common peryll.

If any man hath reported vnto you, the thynges done
by the Senate, there is no cause why you shoulde
meruarie, that oure continuerie leaueth ouer harde,
vnto theym, and thereby that the agremente of Cor-
dianus inuers, wth theyrs, and hys voluptuouse
lyfe, is by theym preferred before vs. For amonges
them all, valianesse, and graue deades, are coun-
ted austere, and tyraunce, and all dissolute lyfe, is
estemed gentle, and pleasaunte. They feare therefore
oure gouernance, because it is moderate, and labo-
rious, and they reioyse at the name of Cordian,
whose infamie of lyfe is not vniowen vnto you.

Wherfore, agaynst them, and suche as they are, you
haue to warre. O Souldours, if a man maye, at the
leaste wyse, call it warre. For my mynde geueth me,
and so maye all other thyngke, that before we approche
neare vnto Italye, the greatest parte of theym, wyll
humble mee vnto vs, wth Laurell Bowes in theyr
handes, and carvinge theyr Chyldren wth them, fall
prostrate at oure feete: o: elles, beyng stryken wth
cowardye feare, runne awaie, leauyng all theyr
goodes behynde theym for me to take, and distribute
amonges you, that you may enioye the same for euer.

Wher he had thus muche spoken, and enterlaced
hys talke, wth manye scornewfull reproches of
the whole Cypte, and Senate of Rome (threatenyng
them, wth the gesture of hys handes, and wth ter-
rible countenaunce, and menacyng them as though
they had been preset) he proclaymed his voyage towar-
des Italy. And then hauninge geuen vnto the Souldy-
ours much monei, he soiourned ther for one day. That
passed, he entred into his iourney, leadynge wth him
a mer-

The historie of Herodian

A mervaylaus great armye, and all the Romaine power. There folowed hym also a great number of Germanes, not to be neglected, whonie he had eyther by force subdued, or els associated in amicte vnto hym. He carped besides divers engens and Instrumentes of warre, with other thynges whiche he had prepared before againu the Barbarous nacions. Now did he marche slowelye because of the wagons, and other necessaries for the warre, whiche were caried in hys compayne. For syng that iourney happened sodelye vnto hym, the thynges expedient for the Souldours were not gathered by anye mans provision, as it was sofore accustomed, but they were then hastelye as it came to hande, taken and caried. Therfore he determined to send before, the Pannonian bandes, in whome he had great confidence, whiche also syssaluted him for Emperour, and willyngly attempted all perylles for hys saufegarde. Theyle he commaunded to set forwarde, before the reste of the herte, and to enter into Italye.

But whyles Maximinus was thus in hys iourney, his affaires had better successe in Carthage, then he looked for. For there was a certayn man named Capellianus, of the order of the Senatours, Lieutenaute of Mauritanie, which is subiect to the Romaines, and of the named Numidia. This nacio was fortisched with stronge armes of men, whiche defended it, from the invasions of y Barbaricns theyr neyghbours, wherby he had aboue hys person, no small bande of men at armes. Betwene this Capellianus, and Gordyan, there was muche discencion, aboue a certayne controvercie in the lawe. Therfore, after Gordyan had obtainede the name of Emperour, he sente one to succeade Capellianus in hys office, & commaunded him to depart from the rule of the Province. But he disdayning therat, & beynge true to hys Prince (of whom he had receaued that dignitie) gathered all the power he had together. And after he had exhortid them, to continue theyr truch, and othe of allegiance, he reneged towardes Carthage, leadynge wylth hym a won-
derfull

Capelli-
anus
Mauri-
tania.
Numi-
dia.

The seventh booke.

Fo. lxxxv.

derfull great and stronge Armye, in the whycche there were verye manye menne, not onelye of sturyshynge age, but also instructed in the handeslyng of all kyndes of weapons, and expert in warrefare, and (through usage of skymyshes wylth the Warbaryens theyr neyghbours) verye vrompte, quycke, and readye to battayle, at all tymes.

When it was declared vnto Gordyan, that Capellianus was commynge towardes Carthage, bothe hym selfe, was stryken wylth a soleynne tremblyng feare, and all the Carthagynenses greatly dismayed, who in a dysordred heape wylthoute anye warelyke order (yet hauninge hope of victorye) thrusste hemselfes forwarde oute of the Cypte, to meete wylth Capellianus.

The olde man Gordyan (as some reporte) allone as Capellianus appreched to the Cypte, despayring of al good hope, because he perceaued Marimine to haue a greate power of men then in Africke remayninge, hanged hym selfe. But the Comynynalte, kepyng secrete hys death, did chose his son for theyr Capitayne. Gordianus han-
So it came to hande stryppes. The Carthagynenses were many more in number, but yet out of order, and hys blyfull in the warres, and being effeminated with bankettes of voluptuousnes, wanted weapons, and all other warelyke instrumentes.

For no man brought out of his house, any other weapon, then eyther a Dagger, a Hatchet, or a Hunteynge staf, or els a Speare hardened in y syre, as they could get for y defens of their bodies. On the contrary part, were Numidians, notable Slingers, and verye connyng horlenien, so that wout Bridle, they coulde rule their horles wylth a Rodde. Therfore y Carthaginenses were easelye repulsed, & constrained to syre. For beynge vnable, to abide the brunt of their enemies, thei threwe away theyr harness, and weapons, and tourned theyr backs altogether in a rude plisye, & thrusting thongh thegincnes and tredyng one uppitanother, there dyd a greater les ouer, number veryphe amonges theym selues, then was comen. Gayne by theyr enemies.

And

The historie of Herodian

And in thys thronge, was Gordianus Sonne slayne, Gordianus and as manye as folowed hym. So that for the multynus Sonne tude of thys that were deade, they coulde not discerne slayne in the bodies that shoulde be enterred. Ne ther coulde y thys. the boode of the younge Gordian be founde. For of so greate a number, whyche fledde, there entered but verye fewe into the Citye agayne, who sauved themselfes, by lurking, in darke, and unknownen corneres. The reste, remaynyng in heapes at the gate, & presynge forwardes, euery man to get in syrie, were by the Numidian Slynghers, and other armed Souldours, slayne. Whiche caused a mervailouse lamentacion, and houlyng of women, and Chyldren, for that they sawe before thei owne faces, theyr dearest frenches, slayne.

There be whiche reporte, that as soone as Gordianus (who for hys age above wythin hys owne house) hearde that Capellianus was entered into the Cypte, dispairing of hys safegarde, went into hys chamber, as though he woulde scape, and wyth hys Cyrdle whiche he had about hym, hanged hym selfe.

Thys was the eande of Gordianus, who was fortunate in the former parte of hys lyfe, and nowe eanded the same, in a synnytude of the Imperyal bygynnyng.

Then Capellianus entred into Carthage, & ther put unto deathe, euery one of the noble men, whiche remained oute of the surye of the Battayl. Ne ther dyde he abyayne, from the spoylyng of the Temples, and ransackyng all Publyke, and priuate Treasures, And goyng unto other Cityes, whiche he had abolisched the honours of Maximinus, the chieff therin he put to deathe, and the reste he afflyted wyth tormentes: pernytryng the Souldours, to burne, and robbe, the Villages, & Fvilles therabout, vnder a pretence of revengyng Maximinus: but yee priuelye allaryng the Souldours heartes unto hym selfe, to the eande, that if Maximinus sped not wel, him selfe might haue the Souldours good wylles, for the obtaynyng of the Emperye. Such was the estate of the assayres in Africa.

The seventh booke

Fol. lxxxv.

Africa. But after y the death of Gordian was heard of in Rome, a neruaylouse terrorre enuaded the Senate, & people of Rome, for that he was lost, in whiche, all their hope, was sytuate. For thei knewe now perfectly, y Maximinus wold spare no man being partly of his owne mynde alayened from theim, and then with an enemys stonake, and manifeſt hatred, for iuste causes, detesting them. Wherfore, thei assebled oftentimes togithers, consulting what thei might do, and synally (seyng thei had entred into one peryll) determined to prepare for warre, and elected two Emperours, whiche shoulde wyth equall auctorite, gouerne the common wealthe, leſte that the Principall dominion, shoulde returne unto Tyranny.

Thei assembled therefore, I ſay, not in the Coort, as thei were wonte before, but in the Temple of Jupiter Capitolyne, the whiche beyng buylde in the highest place of the Citie, the Romaines haue in moſt estimacion. There, the doores beyng ſhute, they ſate alone, & hauinge, as it were, God to their witnesſe of their Counſell, and the beholder of all y thei intended, thei chose furth ſuche as excelled the reſte in age, and dignitie, to giue their voyces of election vnto. Out of the whiche hole numbre, ther were two, named Maximinus, and Albinus, through the moſte voyces, creaſt and Alled Emperours. Of thys two Maximus hadde often binus bene generall Capitaine in the warres, and alſo ordeſt reded hym ſelfe very politiquely, in the gouernaunce Empereſt of the Citie, wherby he cauſed the people to haue a very good opinion of hys wytte, prouidence, and contynet lyfe. And Albinus, being a noble man borne, twise Counſall, and hauing ruled many prouinces, without ſtrife or complaynt, was reputed the nicker. Thus were thei made Emperours, by the decree of the Senate, and endewet w all the Imperyal honours. But whiles theiſe thinges were in doing in the Capitolle, the Romaine people (vncertain it is, whether through the ſoliciting of Gordianus frenches, or els ſtirred ther vnto, by ſome peruerſe rumors) came with force vnto the gates, and filled with multitude of people, y wave

A. i. whiche

which goeth into the Capitoll. And ther hausing Clubbes, & Stones in their handes, labored to interrupte the thinges that were cocluded in the Capytoll, refusyng chiefly Marimus: alledging that he was more seuere, then the symple Commons could well bera w- all. Wherefore, thei were mosse of all offended wyth hym: cryenge, and threateninge, that thei woulde stea them bothe, for his sake. For thei required a Prince of Gordianus kynred, that in that samyle, and name, Thimperiall Dominion myght contine. Then Abbinus, and Maximus, beyng garded wyth all the youthe of the order of knighthode, and the men of Armes of the Cytie, wearing swordes, attempted to go furth of the Capitole. But thei were dryuen backe, w Clubbes, and Stones, vntyl that through the inuentione of some one man, thei beguyled the people after this sorte.

Gordianus an Infant.
Her was a little infat, þ Son of Gordianus daughter, whiche was named after hys Grandefathers name. The same, thei commaunded certayne, whome thei sent furth, to fetche vnto them, who findinge hym playeng at home, did put hym vpon their shoulders, & carped hym thrughe the myddes of the people, declaringe that he was Gordianus nene we, and callynge hym by name, vntyll thei had brought hym into Capitol, the people makinge ioyfull acclamacions, and browing bowes before hym. And after that the Senate had prouounced him Emperour, seing he could not gouerne Thempyre, becaule of his tender infancie, the yre of the people was asswaged, and thei suffered the olde Emperours to enter into Thimperiall Pallacie. But ther happened at that tyme, a pestylent rouse Calamitye vnto the Cytie of Rome, throughs the rash boldenes of two Senatours. For when as the Senate was assembled, about certaine Publicke assayres, two of Marimus Souldiours, whiche were departed from the Campe, bothe of mydle age came vnto the Coorte gate, to herken, and spy, what was done, or deternyued, bryngg withoute weapons. And sauing only they: Jackes, and their Clokes therby, they

thes stodes togyther, amonges the reste of the people. But whyles all other stode at the doore, two or thre at the mooste beyng more desirouse to heare what was sayde, then the reste, entred into the Coorte, and passed a lytle further, then the Aultare of Victoria. Therwithall, a Senatour, whiche a lytle before had ben Counsull, named Gallicanus, a Cartaginese borne, and an other whyche had bene Pretor, named Decenius, Callicanus, so deynly (when thei looked for no such chancie, canas, and had they: handes styll vnder their Clokes) with Decenias their daggers stabbeth the Souldiours to þ hertes. For all the Senate, because of the late iedicion, dyo weare Souldiethys: weapons, some openly, some pryuely, to defende oþr man their bodys wall, frõ the trechery of they: enemyses. in the **26** The Souldiours beyng thus murdered, when they ple, were not able, so sodeynlye, to defende them selues, laye prostrat before the Aultare. With whiche syght, the other beyng dismayed, throughte the murder of they: Companions, and feareyng the flockyngs togyther of the people, because them selues were wythout weapons, furthwyth they fledde awaie.

Then Gallycanus lepte hastely oute of the Coorte into the myddes of the people, and there shewing hys daceice of sworde, and his hande, stylling with bloode, exhorted them, to purue, and lea the enemyses of the Romaine people, and Senate, and the frendes, and Companions of Marimus. Wherid all the people being prouoked, receaued Gallycan w ioyfull thoutes, and pursued the Souldiours with stones, as farre as thei well myght. And the Souldiours, hauing gotten into their Campe, a fewe of the beyng wounded, and hurt, thei harneised them selues, & defended their Trenche. But Gallicanus (seyng he had already set vpon such a myschiese) rayled vp a ciuple, and very perniciose battayre. For after he hadde commaunded all the Armoyses to be broken vp (in the whyche were kepte weapons, rather of pompe, then of warre) where wth every man myghte arme hym selfe, accordynglye. And hauing opened the Swoedeplaryars Hallcs, caused every man to arme himself w his own harnessse. **A. a. g.** **And**

And taking out of the houses, and shoppes in the Cy-
tie, what so euer weapon was within them, cyther
swoze, speare, dagger, or are, when as suryc & anger
had made all thing y came to hande a weapon, sur: h:
with thei went in plumpes, withoute ordre, vnto the
Camp, and, as yf thei shuld assaulte a Citie, thei be-
sieged the walles, and gates of the Camp. But the
Souldours within, beying expert in syghting, defen-
ded them selues with the battailementes of their wal-
les, and their Targettes, repulysing the common peo-
ple, with often shotte of arrowes, and their lōge spea-
res. Finally, when y people determined to returne in-
to the Citie, because thei were wiered, and the moste
parte of the Swoerde plaiers soze wounded, beying
verye neare nyghte, the Souldours, perceauynge the
recheiße regarde of the people in departinge (for the
Romaines thoughte not, that the Souldours durste
syghte with them, hande to hande, or being so fewe in
number, to enter oute of their fortresse, to syghte with
so great a multitude) sodeinly settinge open their ga-
tes, made a straunge, and forcible inuasion against that
dysondered heape of people. In that conflicte were all
the Swoerde players slayne, and a greate number of
the people, thrusse to death in the presse. Which ones
randed, the Souldours returned to their Camp, be-
cause it was not farre of. Herevpon, there rose moze
behenit indignacion amonges the Senatours, and
people of ROME. Wherefore thei chose for their Cap-
taynes, euery noble, & valyaunt man, throughout all
Italye, and leuengen all the youthe togyther, arwed
them with such weapons, as in that soeine tumult,
thei could get. The chiefest, and Strongest parte dyd
Maximus, leade to fight against Maximinus, the rest
remayned for the custody, and defens, of the Citie. In
the meane whyle, there were daylye skirmyshes,
and assaultes, at the walles of the fortresse, but to
no purpose, nor profitte, the Souldours, defending
them selues from above, and drivynge away thame
fullye, the common people, whiche they strake,
and wounded.

Albinus

Albinus, whiche remayned at home, reque-
red the people by proclamacion, to take truce, and be-
come frendes, wylth the Souldours, vnto whome he
promysed also perdone of all they had committido.
But he coulde induce neyther partye therewith. The
mischiefe encreasing dayly, more & moze. For the peo-
ple disdayned, that so great a multytude, should be had
in contempte of so small a number. On the other syde,
the Souldours gryuously grudged, that they should
suffer that of the Romaines, whiche they neuer lo-
ked for of the Barbarous nacions.

Finallye, when the assaultes proceeded not, as the
people woulde haue it, it seamed good to their Cap-
taines, to turne away, al the Riuers, & waters, which
came by Cundittes into the Campes, that the Souldy-
ours myght be afflicted wylth wante of water, and
wylth thyrste. Wherefore, in makynge of Trenches
and cuttyng the Cundyt Pypes, they tourned away
all the streames of water from the Fortresse.
But the Souldours, perceauynge the peryll immi-
nent, and dryken wylth desperation, opened their ga-
tes, and runnyng vpon the mulcitude, whiche ranne
away, pursued theym vnto the verye Gates of the
Cypre.

Then the Common people, beynge Inferior, and
not able to sustayne thys cruell conflict, gat them in-
to theyr houses, and from thence, vered the Souldy-
ours, who durste not enter into the houles to theym
unknowen. Wherefore, they leyng the houses, & shop-
pes shutte, caste syre to the doores and pozches, whi-
ch stode out towardes the streate, wherof there are
verye manye in ROME. Whereby it came to passe, that
partyle through the farre distaunce of the houses, and
partyle through the tymber buyltynge, a great parte
of the Cypre was burned, and many men of ryche sub-
staunce, sodeynlye became poore: hauyng loste nota-
ble possessiouns, eyther welthye, throughe the reue-
newes therof, or elles of great estimation through the
beautie of the same. Neither was there a sinal number
of men destroyed. For that theyr portalles and doores
beinge

A.iii.

The historie of Herodian

beyng on fyre, they had no waye to escape furthe of the houses. The substance, and goodes, of ryche men, was ransacked, the Souldours geuyng theiur whole myndes to spoyle, and robberye, and neadye Beggers of the Cytye, mynglyng theiur selues amonges them.

But the rage of the fyre so wandered, that it burned and consumed more houses, then some greate Cytye hathe in compasse of buyldynge. Duryng the tyme that thys calamytte was done at Rome, Mariminus, makyng hast in hys iourneye, was come vnto the borders of Itale. And hauyng sacryficed vpon the Aultars, whiche were there erected, he contynued on hys voyage, comandydynge the Souldours to kepe on theyz Maruells, and marche in order of Battayle. But seyng we haue made mencion alreadye, of the reuslte of Afriske, the Ciuyll warre at Rome, and the actes by Mariminus, wþt hys iourney hþtherunto, we wyll declare the rest hereafter.

The eande of the seuenth Booke.

The

The Argumente of the eighth Booke of Herodian.



¶ the beginnyng of the eþght, and laste booke, is shewed, how, and in what order, Mariminus came vnto the Conynnes, and boundes of Itale, by the Alþpes, as farre as the Cytye of Aquileia, where he founde ressistence. After that is described the scituacion of that Citye, the preparation for the warre, the assautes made by Mariminus arnye, & the stoute ressistence of the Aquilevens. Consequentye, howe Mariminus was slayne, and what ioye was made therfore. And how Albinus (which the aucthour in the former booke called Balbinus) & Marimus, after they had a litle space, resigned in great traquilaþie, were slayne by the men at armes. After whome, Gordianus beyng, xiii. yeares of age, enjoyed the Emþrye alone.

Aa.iii.

The



Chane in the lass booke recyed, what Maximinus did, after the death of Gordia, his tornaynts Italie, wryth the sedicion, and reuolte, of the people, and Houldiours, within the Cypre selfe of ROME. When Maximinus was arryued in the confynes of Italpe, he lente certayne Scowzers before, to espye, whether there were any stale, or embushmentes, lying in the bottom of the Alpes, and the thicke woodes there: And led the Armye, into the playne, commaundynge the men of Armes, to march forward, in a square orde, to thende that a great parte of the syeldes, myght be couered with them. And having brought all impedimentes, and Cariage, into the myddes, him selfe followed, with the Ycomie of his Garde, to rescue them, if they were distressed. On eyther syde, the wynges were of me of Armes, on Barbed Horses, with Pauritanian, Slynghers, Archers of the oriental Regias, and hoxlemen of Cernitanpe, whome he had waged, for the increas of his ayde. And he was accustomed, to set them in the foye fronte of the battayle, against his enemys, because thei shoulde sustayne, and receaue the syrke brunte, beynge boulde, and strunge me. And (ysk neade so required, he had rather, those Barbarous, & rude people, were losse, than any other of his owne Houldiours.

After thei had passed the plaines, obserning theyre due order in marchinge, they came to a cyte of Italpe, named of the inhabitauntes Cumona. The same Cumona is sypuate in a lowe playne, at the foote of the Alpes.

There, the Secours reported unto Maximinus, that the Towne was bōide, and forsaken of the inhabitauntes, who were all fledde, the gates of the Cyples, and the houses, consumed wryth fyre, and all thynge,

Whiche
B. b. j.

whiche was in the Towne, or fielde, carped awaye, or burnte, no foode remayninge, eyther for man, or beaste.

Wherwith Maximinus was veri glad: for he thought, that other people, wold doo semblably, through feare of him. But contrarywyse, the Souldours murmurred, and grudged, that they shold in the very begynning, be vexed w famine. And when thei had passed ouer the nyghte, some of them, in the open, and comen houses, other some, in the playne syelde, immediately after the Sonne rysing, they came vnto the Alpes.

The grettestes of the Alpes to pearce the cloudes, so long also, that thei seame Italie, in maner of a wal, and so high, that thei seame Italpe, touching, on the lefte hande, the Lirrenian, and on the right syde, the Ionian Seas: beyng full of thondē t brode, and thicke forestes, with very narowe pathes, and vnneth passable, by reason of the height of the bro-
nia Seas ben Rockes, and stopenes of the highe banckes: haing notwithstanding many narowe passages, made with laboure of hande, by the aunciente Italions. Wherefore, a meruelous feare entred into the Souldours hertes, to passe that waye: dreading, þ the hyll toppe: was already taken by their enemies, and all the stra-
tes stopped, to forbid them passage. Neither did theyz
feare seame sondē, to them that behelde the nature of the place.

After thei had passed the Alpes, and were descended into their Campe, thei began to rejoyce, and bāquet, together. And Maximinus then conceiued a sure trust, that all hys assayres, shal haue prosperous successe: seyng that the Italians, trusted not vnto the difficultie of the places, wherein, them selues were wonte to larkē, and prouide for their safety, and where, they might lye in wayte for their enemies, and fightyng from aboue, easely distresse the. When thei were entred into þ playne, þ Scourers brought word, þ Aquileia the greatest Cite of Italpe, had shut their gates, and that the Pannonia bādes, which went before, had veri fiersely assayled the walles, yet not withstandyng, theyz

theyz osten attemptes were all in bayne. Whereloze, beyng werled, they were constrainyd to departe, a great number, of Stones, Spear es, and Arowes, ha-
ving herte them, from the toppe of the walles.

Then Maximinus, being ver y angry with the Pannonianians, as thonghe thei had not foughte baleantlye ynough, made haste thitherwardes: trussinge, with out any more labour, to wyn the Cite.

But Aquileia, as it is a myghty Towne, was abūdā The set-
tely enhabited of people. And as it were the Marts tuaciō of
Towne of Italy, & the territorie of Illiria, it did frō Aquileia
the mayne lande, minstre, to those that layled in the
Seas, plenty of all suchs necessaries, as was brought
thither by the Kyuers, and the lande: And from the
Sea, vnto the mayne lande, thinges very necessarye
for the hygher Countreys, whych throughe the byt-
ernes of wynter, were nothyng fertyll. But chy-
sely it mynistrē Wynes, wherewyth that Regyon
abounded, vnto the nighe Countreys, that hadde no
byne trees at all. The whyche caused, that besy-
des the greate number of Cytezins, there repayzed
vnto that Cyte, very many Straungers, and Mar-
chauntes also. And Certeis, the multitude was at
this tyme muche more augmented, by the assembly of
Countrey people, who haynge forsaken theyz
owne small Droupes, and Uylages, dyd truste them
selues, vnto the greateenes of this Cyte. The olde
wall, whereof, was a greate parte fallen downe.
For, whyles the Romaynes floyshed in Dominion,
the Cytes of Italpe, neaded neyther wall, nor
weapon, lyynge in quyer tranquyltie, and be-
yngе associatēd in the rule of Thempyre wth them.
But nowe, necessitē compellyngē them, they burl-
led vp theyz walles agayne, wth Towres, Wal paracion
werkes, and Rāpiers: and haynge forsyldē their of the A-
Cyte wthin fursh, and shurte theyz Gates, stode quylcys
all togyther, bothe daye, and nyghte vpon the for the de
walles, valcantlye dryupingē backe theyz cue-
fence of their Cite.

W b. g. Theyz tye.

Crispi-
nus He-
nophilus

Their Capitaines of chiefeſt power, were two men which had bene Consulles, chosen by the Senate, named Crispinus, and Henophilus. Thiese procured by muche diligence, all thynges necessary, to be brought before hande into the Cittie, to thende thei myghte the longer time sustaine the ſiege. Ther was in þ Towne great abundance of water, throughte the great number of welles, the Riuere whiche ran a longe by the walles, and the dyches, betwene them, and their enemys.

Thiese thynges beynge thus ordred within the Cittie, when Maximinus hearde, that thei defended their walles stontly, and had shut their gates againſt hym, he refolued to ſende, vnder color of Ambaſſade, ſome which ſhould ſpeak unto them, and (yf it were poſſible) perſuade them, to open the gates of the Cittie vnto hym.

He had then in hys Armye, a certayne Magistrate of Aquileia, whose wyfe, childe, and houſehold, were enclosed within the Cittie. This man therfore, with a certaine Capitaines, he ſente as oratores vnto theym: truſting, that the Citezyns wold eaſely obey his auſthoritie. When thei approched nigh the walles, they ſpake vnto the people on this wyſe, and ſayed. That their Commune Emperour commaunded them, laying al armes a part, to obſerue peace, to receaue him as their frende, and not as theyr enemys, and to eccupye them ſelues in prayers, and ſacrificeng to theyr Goddes, rather then in deſyze to murder. To take compassion of their native Countrey, ſhortly (yf thei perſisted in their obſtinacie) lyke to come to bitter ruine, & decay. That thei myght, yf thei would, with on deede, ſaue them ſelues, & their Countrey. For thei ſaid, that their good Emperour, wold forȝet, and forgiue, all offences, ther before commytted, ſeynge that it was not their transgrefſion, but the peruerſe fault of other men. Suche wordes did the Ambaſſadores ſpake vnder the wall, wych ſo loude boyce, that thei myghte eaſely be harde, althoſh, nat of all the people, yet of as many, as ſtoode vpon the walles, and Towres.

For

For they dyd wylle ſylence, ~~and~~ attētively geue eare vnto that the Ambaſſadours ſpake. But Crispinus, fearing, leſt through thole allurementes, they woulde be perſuaded, to take peace for warre, and open theyr gates vnto theyr enemys (as the common people are euer wauerynge and vncouſtaunte) ranne from one wall to another, earneſtly deſyzyng, and inſtauntlys beſechinge them to perſeuer valiantly, and reſide manfully, and not to violote theyr faythe, and allegiance, towardes the Senate, and the people of Rome, nor yet neglecte the Title, and Fame of Italy, ſo long tyme preſerued from the invaſions of forreyne enemys, nor geue credit, vnto a false, perjured, and trayterous Tyrant, nor beynge allured wylle gentle ſayned talke, runne headlonge vnto theyr owne maniſte deſtructiſ. But truſt to the ſortune of þ warre, whiche moſt coomonly is ſo vncertayne, that ſometimeſ a greate huge hoſſe, are of a ſmall number diſcomfited: and thole, whiche ſeame the mightier, are by theym whiche are comp̄ed the weaker, diuers tymeſ vanquished. Neþher that they ſhould feare the greatneſſe of hys armye. For (quod he) they that fyghte in another mannes quarell, when they ſee, that the good happe of the victoře ſhall departe to another, doo but ſayntlye endure the Battayle: perceauyng them ſelues onely to be pertakers of the peryll, and the verye profyt of the victoře, to remayne vnto another man. But they whiche fyghte for their countrey, beſydes that they ought to be of better hope (for they conteſde to take nothyng of others, but to defende theyr owne) are alſo of a greater ſtomacke, as thole whome no deſyze of dominion, but euerye mans owne neceſſitie, compelleth to fyghte, becauſe the commoditye of the victoře, is chyefelye due vnto them.

Crispinus ſpeakinge thole wordes, nowe vnto euerye man perteſcuerlye, and then to all generalllye, beynge a man of hys owne diſpoſition honourable, and floriflyng in the Romayne eloquence, beſydes that, gratefull to euerye man, for hys meke gouernauſce, did eaſily ſtabliſhe the hartes of þ people to continue in

South,
sayers.
Weles.

their dutie and allegiaunce. Wherfore he commaundes the Ambassadours to departe to Maximinus againe, Wythout anye thyng concluded. It was reported, that Crispinus was hartened to abide the fortune of þ batayle, by the answere of the Southsayers, whiche reported, that the inwards of the beastes, betokened luke kyne successe of his affaires. And in deade, the Italiens bled to geue much credit to þ superstition. There wer spred abrode besydes the Oracle of a certayne Idole in that countrey, whiche promised victorye. The inhabitauntes there cal the same Idole Weles, and do with great reverence worshyppe it, interpreting hym to be Apollo. Whose Image, certaine of Maximinus owne Souldours, affyrmed that they sawe in the ayre signyng for the Cittie. Which thing, whether many beleued it for a trueth, or whether the fable pleased the, to mittigate thereby the infamy of so great an army, because thei were unequal in battayle, to so small a number of Cptayns, not exercised in the warres (that it might seeme they were ouercome rather by þ Goddes then men) I am not very certayn. But the straungenes of the matter, made it leame more credibile.

Afer the Ambassadours were retourned wout any resolute conclusion, Maximinus being syzed w much more fury, made greater hast then he dyd before. But when he came vnto the Riuers, whiche runneth xii. miles of from the Cptayne, he found it of a very depe and broade Channell. For in that seazon of the yere, the Riuere (whiche the longe wynter before, caused to endure) beynge molten vpon the next hylles, had made so great a floude, that the Arme could not passe ouer it, by anye meanes. For the Aquilianiis had broken, and carayed away the Bridge, whiche was a goodly and sumptuous peice of worke, buylded by the auncyent Emperours, of square ston, with many small pillars standing one by another vpon the same. Wherfore when thame coulde passe ouer, neyther by Bridge, nor bessell (for ther was none nigh hand) he stote styl in a dumpe, rausyng what to do. But certayne Germapnes, being ignorant, wþt what swyfnes, and violence

violence, the Riuers of Itale did runne, & supposing that they course was gentle, and slow ouer the fields, as the Riuers in they Countrey (whiche for that they haue no swifte streame, are easly congeled ouer wþt Ise) aduentured them selues, & their horses that were perfect in swymming, into the middes of the Chanell: where, throughe vpolence of the Streame, they were drowned. After Maximinus had lyen styll in Campe, ii. or. iii. dayes, he cast a depe trenche aboue the same, that no euemies shoulde sodenly set vpon them, & remayned vpon that side of the Riuer, consulting howe he myght make a Bridge to passe ouer. Whyles he so abode very pensife, because there was no tymbre, nor Boates with the whiche ioyned together, he myghte make a Bridge, certayne Carpenteres declared vnto hym, that in the Villages rounde aboue, forsaken of the Inhabitauntes, there were many round Tubbles and Hoggesheades, wherin the people were wonte to carye wyne: the whiche being rounde like shypes, þf they were bounde together, in maner of small Boates, would easly carye them ouer. For being fastened together, covered with Oysters, or Twigges, & well baled with earth, they would never be drowned. When þ was finisched, þ soldiours easlye passed ouer to the other shore. And there, hauing burned al þ villages whiche they founde abandoned of inhabitauntes, did cut down all þ vines, & trees, wherby they greatly defaced þ beauty of þ region. For all the countrey seemed to be compassed aboue, in maner of a Theater, w trees set in due order, & bynes ioyned together, lyfted vp in height like vnto a Scaffold. Al whiche being plucked by þ rootes, charme approuched nigh vnto þ citie. Neuertheles because they were all wery, Theperour would not þ they shoulde furthw begyn þ assault. But hauing encaped, more then an arrowes shooote frō the Cittie, deuided the into hundreds, appoynted the order of their marching like vnto a wedge, smal before, and broade behinde, & limiting to every Company, a part of the wall, to scale, and batter, he gaue them lycence to recreate them selues, for one daye.

Thac

The historie of Herodian

That pasted, he began to geue the assault, and having moued to the wall, all sortes of engyns, when no kynd of Batterie was omitted, there was almost every day cruell skyrmishes fought. For the Souldours enuironed the walles, as it were with a toyle, or nette, and fought with mucche stoutnes of stomacke. And on the contrarie parte, the Aquileiens resisted verye ba- liauntlye: who hanynghe shute the dores of their tem- ples, and house, dyd all together, wth they, wyes, and Children, vpon the walles, Towers, and Battyl- mences, defende they, Cytte. Neþher was there any age, whiche refused to syghte for their Countrey.

Maximinus then pulled downe al the Suburbes, and whatsoeuer buyldynge was without the Cytte, wth the tymber wherof, he made all kynde of engyns, and instrumentes, wherwith he might batter the walles, or at least wyle, some part therof, whereby the armys myght enter into þ Cytte, and in spoyllyng, sackyng, and defacynge, the same, leaue it desolate, and boþde of habitation. For he thoughte it þ woulde be against his honour, to go vnto Rome, before he had destroyed the Cytte, which synt resisted him in Italy.

Wherfore, he rode wþ hys Sonne, whome he had iornd vnto hym in the Empyre, amonges the Souldours, premysyng them many good morawes, and exhortynghe them, to stande lyke menne to theyr tacklyng.

But the Cytwyns of Aquileia, threw downe great stones vpon them. And having sylded verye many Ladels with Brimstone, Lyne, and Pitcher, as soone as the Souldours began to scale the walles, they powred downe þ same so fadie, that it seamed violene thowres. Wher þ Pitcher & baggagge, fell vpo þ naked partes of þ souldours boðies, thei threw fro thei brigaders, & the rest of their harness, vpon wering very boate, and their tumber engyns being set on fyre. Then a man myghte see the Souldours, thowre away their owne harness. Which thing, hauing a colour, that thei were dispoyled by the vanquishers, was inuented, rather by the knytie of arte, then force of batayle. Wherby it

A sore re-
buke.

The viii. booke

Fel. 65.

happened, that many of the Souldours, eyther losse they syghte, or elles had their faces, and other bare partes of their bodies, burned. The Aquileiens threw downe also, into their Towres, & engyns of woode, many torches staves, couered wþ Rosen, and pitch, wholē endes, were sharpened, with heade, lyke bata- rrowes: whiche being kindled, and sticke d fadie in to the Timber wozie, dyd easly set all on fyre. That notwithstanding, the synt daies, the fortune was e- quall on eyther syde. But anon after, the courage of Maximinus armys dyd alwage, and because they hope was frust rate, and had deceiued the, thei wered every day moþe pelese then other. For those, who thei before supposed, wold not abyd the brunt first of theyr force, thei nowe perceived, not onely, not to shrikke, but also, to resistre valeantly. Contrariwyse, the sto- mackes of the Aquileenses, were daylye, more, and more exhausted. And hauyng, thogh vse, obtayned, boþe therperre feate of syghtinge, and therwith all manfull corage, thei so despysed the Souldours, that thei mocked them, wth iestynge at Maximinus, when he came nigh vnto the walles, and blustering sute, many opprobrious tautes against him, and his Sonne. Wherewith he being chaufed, when he could not auenge him selfe vpon hys enemys, he put to cruel death, many of his own Capitaines: alleging, þ thei had nor like valeaunte men, and true subiectes, done their full endeour, in the assaultinge of the Ci- tye. Wherby it came to passe, that the Souldours be- came moþe angry towardes hym: And his enemys, had him in moþe contempt, and derision. It chaufed besydes, that the Aquileiens abosidde wth plenty of vitayle, and all other necessaries. For what so ever was expedient, to the sustenaunce of men, and horses, the same was before hande brought into the Cytte. On other syde, the armys languished with penury of foode. And after all the trees were cut downe, and the fieldes wasted, some of the Souldours lay in Cab- bans, such as thei could for hysse make, and other sone in the open feldes, subiect to the heate of the Sonne,

C. i. and

The historie of Herodian

and the weatenes of the Rayne. Neþher was there any kynde of noþhmente, broughte vnto them, for them selues, or their cattell. For all the wayes, and passages, were by the diligence of the Romaines, shut vp with greate walles, and Gates. The Senate also, had sente certayne Senatours, with a compaþie of armed personnes, chosen out of all Itaþe, to defende the Shores, and Hanens, geuing no man licence to sayle. So that all thinges done at Rome, were kepte close, from the eares of Marimine. All the highe wayes besydes, and Byþathes, were diligently watched, that no man shoulde passe by them. So it came to passe, that the Armye, whiche besieged the Towne, was it selfe also enclosed ron.ide aboue. For thei coulde neþher take Aquileia, nor passe forward towards Rome, throngh wante of shypes, and wagons, whiche were all before hande taken vp by the Romaines. The rumor also throughe suspition augmented, that all the Romayne people, were already in Armes, and that Italy, with all the Illyrian, and Barbarous naciōs, whiche enhabyte the Easte, and Southe Countreys, had wþch one consent, conspyred, to ioyne together, against Mariminus, for the despÿte, and grudge, they bare vnto hym. Wherefore, the Souldiours fell into dispayze of good hope, beþng afflicted, wþth scarceteþ of all thinges, and haþyng no water, but such, as thei diew out of y Kyuer, which was defiled with bloode, and deade Carcasses. For the Aquilevens, threwe into the Kyuer, such deade bodies, as thei coulde not bury. And thole whiche perished with sworde, or sicknes, in the Campe, were throwen into the Kyuer lykewyse. Amonges whome, there were many, whiche died by famin, haþyng when thei were drowned, some breath remaynyng.

Whyles the Army aboade thus sorrowfull, wþde of all succoure, sodeinly, when Mariminus restes in his Pavillion, one daye vacant from batayle, and all the Souldiours, were gone to reste theim selues, in theyr Cabans, and Tentes, the men at Armes, whiche had theyr Statcions, within the Citye of Rome, vnder the

The .viii. booke

Fol. clv.

the Hyll Alban, and therin, their wþues, & chldre, cōsulted, and agreed, to lea Marimine: that thei might be ones exempt, from that longe, & inexplicable syege of the Cytþe, and mōing of warre against Italy, for the loue of a Tiraunt, who was abhorred of all men.

Wherefore, takinge cozage vnto them, about noneþyde, thei wente to his Pavillion, the yeomen of his Garde, cōspiring together with them. And there, after thei hadde pulled downe his Images, thei slewe hym, and his Sonne, when they came furþe, to speke vnto the Souldiours: and with them, the lord great Maister of his house, and all his bearest frendes. And then threw their bodies furþ wþ despite, leuyng minus & them, to be devoured of Dogges, and Wyþdes: seding his Son, onely the two Emperours heades vnto Rome. This eande of lyfe, had Mariminus, with his Son, both receyvinge condigne punishment, of their þylls dered gouernaunce. At the first tidinges, of the two Princes death, the Army stode styll, amased, & vncertayne what thei might doo. For it was not equally acceptable vnto theim all, especiallye not vnto the Panionians, and Barbarous Thracians, who hadde depurued the Emperore, vnto Mariminus. But when they perceived that the deade coulde not be vndone, they helde them selues contented alþoughþ vñwillingly, and sarned to reioyce with the resse. Then, layeng a syde their weapons, thei went to the walles of Aquileye, lyke peaceable me, and therre declaring the death of Marimine, despÿred that the Gates might be set oþe vnto them, beþng nowe of their mortall enemys, become their louing frendes. But the Capitaynes of Aquileia, would not permitt it, but shewed furþ vpon the walles, the Images of Marimus, Albinus, and Gordian, Emperours, crowned with Garlandes of Lawrell. Unto the which Images, them selues syþte making joyful acclamacions, exhorted the Army also, to acknowledge, and reverence them, whome the Senate, and people of Rome, hadde chosen to be Emperours.

For, said thei, the other Gordians before pasted, are amonges

C. c. y. amonges

monges the Goddes. They did set furth also upon the walles, a market of all necessaries, with greate abundance of meate, wyne, garmetes, and ali other thinges, whiche that riche, and florishing Cytie, could minister vnto them. That thing, did meruelously abash the Souldiours: who percevued, that the Citezins, had storr yngouge of vitayll, to abyde a farre longer seage. And on the other side, them selues, being afflictes with wante of foode, shold rather haue all perysched, than conquerid that Cittie, abounding wyth all thinges expedient for mans relif. Whyles the Souldiours thus aboade vnder the walles, and tooke such thinges, as their necessarie required, in compayne of the Citezins, their countenaunce was of peace, and frendship, a forme of siege, as yet remaining, for that the Romayne Souldiours, laye abouthe the walles whiche were enclosed, and shut. In the meane while, that theise thinges were in doing at Aquileya, y horsemen, which caried the Emperours heades to Rome, making great haste, with sped diligence, were received into every Cittie, and Town, with the gates opē, and the multitude of Citezins, and enhabitauntes, brynging Lawrell in their handes. And then having passed y Marishes, & Lakes, whiche are betwene Albinum, tinum, & Rauenenna, ther founde Marimus in Rauenenna, leuieng, & waging Souldiours out of the Cittie, Parium², and Italy, and calling a great number of Germains vnto his ayde, the whiche were sent him, by the comon people of Germany, whō he before in his Proconsulship amounges them, had prudently gouerned.

Whiles he wae thus musterig his power against Marimius, y horsemē arriuued ther lodeli, bringing w the h Princes heades, & declared y victory, w the prosperouse successe of their affaires, & y good wil, & cōfet, of y people, & Army, to y obediece of thole Emperors, whō y Senate had elected. Whē thise thiges were so sodely w out expectaciō reported, furthw, the people ren vnto the Aulters to sacrifice, every man singyng, and recysyng at the victory, whiche wythoute any troublome blynes, they had obtayned.

Then

Then Marimus after the sacryfycē earded, dismisseth the horsemē to Romē, to carry thither, the sayd heades, and declare the whole circumstance, vnto the people. Whēn they were arriuē at the Cytie, and hauyng parre the heades vpon twoo Speares, caried the same throughe y streates, to be seane of the people, no tonge can tell, the ioye, and myrth was there that daye. For there was no person, eyther yonge, or olde, but ranne vnto the Temples, and Aulters.

No man abode within hys owne house, but ranne lyke madde men, shoutyng, and reiysyng one with an other, and gatheryng them selues together, in a circle, as thoughe some manne woulde make an Oration vnto them. Albinus hym selfe offered an hundredth beastes, and all the Magistrates, reiysed abouis measure, as though they had escapes y are, whych before henge ouer theyr neckes. Purseuautes, & Postes, were sente belydes, wyth Laurell in theyr handes, to beare those newes vnto all the Prouinces.

Whyle thys so great ioye, and myrthe, continued amounges the Romaynes, Marimus remoued frō Rauenenna, and went vnto Aquileia: hauyng passed al the Maryshes, in the whiche the Riuere Eridanus, and the nyghe Lakes, doth overflowe, so that they runne into the Sea, by. vii. armes, and therefore, the nyghe enhabitauntes, cal the same Lake, in theyr tonge. vii. Seas. Furthwith the Aquileiens opened their gates, and receaved Marimus. And verye manye Cyties of Italye, sente theyr chiese Magistrates, as Ambassadores vnto him, clothed in white garmetes, & crowned wyth Laurell, bringinge with them, the Images of theyr Countrey Goddes, and Crownes of Golde, yf there were any, amounges their chieffest Jewels: wher withall, they gratified Marimus, and strowed bowes to him in his passage. The armye which had besieged Aquileia, mette hym also, in peaceable apparell, wyth Laurell in their handes: but not with so trewe and loyng a section, as with a sayned good wyll, and reuerence, for the tymē onelye, applyed vnto the present estate, of the Prince. Yea, many of them misued priuely, that

The historie of Herodian

lye, that he whom they had chosen was slayne: & thos whiche the Senate had created, possessed the Princepalie.

After Marcius had spente the first, & second dawe, in offering of sacrifice, the thryd day he assembled al his armes, together in the playne, & there sitting in his tri-bunal seate, made thys Dration vnto them.

Howe profitable your penitence, and fauour reconciled wyth the Romayne people, hath been vnto you, your selues haue by experiance throughlye learned, in acceptyng peace for warre, and obseruynge the stile of true warriours, which is one the most holy, & sacred, mysterie of the Romaine Emperye. Wherfore, you ought hereafter, to enioye the same cōmoditie, in gardynge your loyaltye, and faythe, towarde the people, and Senate of Rome, & to vs your Emperours, who, through our nobilitie, bothe of byrth, & in acces done, as it were by certayne degrees ascended, the Senate, and people of Rome, haue elected. Neþher is the possession of principalitie peculiþer vnto one man, but of olde antiquitie, common vnto all the Romayn people. For in the Cytye selue, is establiþhed the Fortune or administration of the same. If you wyl therfore, retaine vs, and geue due honour, and reuerence, vnto your Princes, ye shall not onely obteyn vnto your selues a blessed lyfe, flowing, and abounding with all goodnes, but also all Nacions, and Cytyes, lyuyng in este, wyl conþeynewe in theyr duetye of allegaunce. We shall lyue, as youre owne heartes desyre: euerie man at home in his owne house, not troubled wyth warres in forreyne Countreyes (that beyng oure peace, and defende the same) For whyles there are two Emperours, bothe the Cytye, and forreyne affaires, shalbe administred more easye: one of theym beyng alwayes readye, to go whynþer necessitye shall call hym. Neþher neðe ye to doubt, that any memorie shall remayne, of that is tofore done, eyther in vs, for

The viii. boke.

(for whatsoeuer ye dyd, was by commaundement) or in the Romayne people; or elles in anye other Nacion, whiche for iniurie done vnto theym, haue rebelled. Let all be forgotten, let there be a perfecte bonde of constante frendshyppe, and a perpetuall faythe of loue, and modestie.

After Marcius had spoken these wordes, and promyed to diſtribute muche money amongeth theym, he soiourned a lytle whyle at Aquilia, and then determined to retourne to Rome.

Wherfore, haþing diſmissed the rest the Armie into the Prouinces, and theyr owne Stations, him selfe retourned to Rome, wych the Peomen of his Garde, (who haþyng the chyefest charge of the Emperours personne, were chosen by Albynus) and manye Germaynes his frendes, in whome he had moſte affyance, as in thos, whome before he was Emperour, he had gouerned. When he entered into the Cytye, Albinus mette hym, wyth yonge Gordian in his companye. The Senate, and all the people receyued them wyth Joyful Cries, & Shoutes, as if they triumped.

But notwithstanding that the Empire were gouerned boþe openly and priuely, with muche modest grauitie, euerie man spake well of it, and all the people were gladde wyth the Princes, for that they were noble men borne, & worthye Thempyre, yit the lyþful, and crabbed stomackes of the Praetorian Souldours, could not wel abide, to heare thole lyþfull prayses of the people, but grudged, & murmed agaynſte that nobilitie: beynge sore greued, that the Princes were created by the Senate. Theyr grudge was augmented, by reason of the Germaynes, whome Marcius retayned wyth hym in the Cytye.

For they thought, that the Germaynes woulde worke theym myſchiefe, yf they attempted any great enterprize.

They feared also treason, leſt perhaps they shoulde be put out of seruice, for their sakes: beynge mindfull of Generis the Emperour, who discharged fro theyr lyþynges, all the Slears of Pertynar.

Wherfore

The historie of Herodian

Wherfore, one daye, when playes were celebrated in the Capitole, and mens mindes addicte unto reuels, and pastyme, soodeynly the Souldours did manifestly shewe furthe, theyz longe dissimuled rancour. For beinge enflamed with yns, they ranne all together, in a franticke moode, unto Thempervall Palayce: requiringe the two olde Emperours to deaue.

It happened then (as the Diuell woulde haue it) that them selues agreed not very wel togetheres. But, as the desyre to raygne, is unsaciable, and the power of gouernaunce indiuisible) eyther of theym, coueyted to be the chiese Ruler. For Albinus was stonmacked therunto, wþth the nobilitie of hys byrthe, and hys twyse beyng Consull. And Marimus was encouaged, with hys Gouernaunce of the Citye, and because he was the more skylfull in all assayzes. But in deade, theyz bothe dignities of Senatours, and theyz suffici-ent nobilitie of byrthe, dyd prycke them bothe forwar-des, eyther to coueyte the sole Regiment, whiche was the cause of theyz owne destruction.

For when Marimus, hearynge that the Pretorian Souldours were come to fle hym, determined to cal for the ayde of the Germayns, whiche were in the Citie, & seamed ablye yngouge, to withstande the Pretorians. Albinus, suspecting some deceipte to be for-ged against hym (because he knewe that the Germaynes fauoured Marimus) prophybyted them to be sent for: denyng, that they were called to resyse the Pretorians, but onely to the entent Marimus might obtaine the rule him selfe alone.

Whyles they thus contended wþthin them selues, so, soodeynlye wþth one assente, the Souldours were vþolentlye entered into the Palayce, hanynge beaten downe the Porters. There toke they bothe the olde men, rente the garmentes they had on, beyng in deade symple, for that they abode wþthin the doxes) and drewe them bothe naked, out of the Palayce, bea-tyng and skornyng them, as Emperours chosen by theyz Wardes, and eye lyddes, sparynge no parte

The .viii. booke.

Fol.cvi.

parte of their body, with all the shame thel coulde de-uyse, thei caried them throughe the myddes of the Ci-tie, wnto their Campe: determining, not to murde them in the Palacie, but rather, to torment them with a flowe kynde of death, that thei might seale the myre Payne.

But when thei harde that the Germayns knewe the matter, and were therfore fallen to harnessse, and comming against them, furthwith, thei put the two Marim⁹, olde men to death, after thei had molte bylaignouslye and Albinus, ordered them. And hauing left their bodyes, in the nus slain myddes of the waye, thei lyfted vp yonge Gordianus Gordian¹⁰, in their Armes (when nothing elles was nere hande) nus sole and proclaymed hym Emperour. And then thei called Empe-often wnto the people, sayinge, that thei hadde slayne rour. Wþth their owne handes, thole, whome the people re-lected at the systre: and chosen Gordian, the ne-uewe of that Gordian, whiche the Romayne people, had compelleo to be Emperour.

This yonge Gordian therfore, thei ledde into theyz Campe, shut their Gates, and there abode in quicte. And the Germaynes, hearing that those were slaine, and thrownen oute, for whome them selues made that hast, determined not to fight for them, which were al-ready deade, but returned to Iles agayne.

This unworthy, and bylaignouse ende of lyse, had the two graue, and modeste, olde men: exalted to the Tyre, & Diademe, of the Emperore, thrugh the nobilitie of theyz byrthe, and singuler deserthes. After whome, Gordian beyng almosse. xiiii. yeres olde, and of all the people proclaymed Prince, tooke vpon hym Them¹¹ pycce.

The eande of the eyghte,
and laste Booke of
Herodian.

M.D.J.

Che Annotations in forme of a
Table after the order of the Alphabette, contay-
nyng the expositiōn of many woordes, Histo-
ries, Fables, Iytuacions of places, and des-
cription of Countreyes, seruynge to
the more easye understandyng
of the presente Hysto-
rye.

A.



Chilles, was one of the most valyaunt Capitaynes of the Greakes, againte Troy, Sonne of Peleus King of Thraece, & Thetis the Doughter of Chiro, by whō he was enstruced, in the scates of Armes. He was slayne by Paris, the Sonne of Priamus, and Hecuba, at Troy y Grete, in y Cēple of Apollo: into y whiche, he was come, during the truce betwene the Greakes, & Troians, vnder assuraunce, to marye Polirena the Doughter of Priam. In al partes of his body, he was wout daunger of wounding, sauing in the sole of y foote. By y which, his mother Thetis held him, whē she plonged him, for y same purpose, in y Stir, one of thinfenal floodes. In y same part of his foote, not plōged, did Paris wouide him, wherof he died. And was buried in a litle hil called Sigeū, hard by Troy, wher, during the siege, the Greakes, encaped. In the warre betwene the Greakes, and the Troyans, he slew Hector, & Troilus, the Sones of Priamus, and Hecuba, & Bretherne of the saide Paris. He was in heigthe (as Licophron wryteth,) viii. cubites.

Adolescēcie is the age betwene Childehood, and mans age: that is betwene. xiii. and .xxi. yeres. Seruitus y Gramariē, & Marro, hath deuided the Ages, into Infācie, Boyes age, Adolescēcie, Youth, & olde age, without any mencio of the perfect age of mans estate. The whiche, after the same diuision, is conteyned betwene youthe, and olde age. Infācie endureth vnto .xxii. yeres. Boyes age vnto .xxiiii. complete.

D o. y.

Buc

The Table

But Serulus Tullius, a King of the Cornaynes, reckened all those which were vnder the age of. xvii. yeres to be Boyes, and after. xvii. yeres, vnyll. xlvi. to be yonge men, and them he called olde men, whiche were aboue. xlvi. yeres of age. Beyonde that is the age decrepice, vncertayne, and doubtfull. Aethiopelike on this worde Libye.

Alexander the grete, was the Sonne of Philipp, king of Macedonye, and Olympias. In his tender age, he was enstructed in learning. And after that, by v space of. x. yeres, brought vp in Philosophie, vnder Aristotle, the most excellent Philosopher of all his time. After the death of hys Father, coueting to be Lord of all the worlde, he apparayled his Armpe, against Darius the Kinge of Persia: who wþth his predecessours, had bene the auncient enemyes of Grece. Hym dyd Alexander vanquishe in sundry batayles, and depþued of the Persian Kyngdome. But after he had obtained many notable victories, in the. xxx. yere of hys age, he dyed by poysion, at Babylō, as Justin writteþ. Neuerthelesse, Plutarche affirmeth the contrary, sayenge that he died of an Ague, very vehement, wherin was no suspicion of Poysion. The Provinces, and Countreyes, by him Conquered, did Perdiccas, (vnto whome at his deathe withoute any more wordes, he delyuered hys Kyng) distribute amonges many Gouernours: who altered their offices of gouernauice, into Royaulnes, and made them selues Kynges. And so was Thempye of Alexander broughte into manye Kyngedomes. The resydue of hys lyfe, ye maye rede in Plutarche, and Quintus Curtius.

Alexandrye, wherof Herodian speaketh in the thirde Booke, is a Citye of Siria, hard by a reseruor of the Sea, called Sinus Ilicus, wherof loke vþo thiese wordes, Ilicus Sinus. There is an other Ciþre called Alexandrye, in the Region of Troas, where Trope the greate stede, as Plinie writteþ, in the. xxx. Chapiter of hys. v. Booke.

An

of annotations.

Anonter Cypte, named Alerandrie, is in Egypte, sctuate vpon the Sea side, oueraneante the Isle Pharus, as sayth Plinie in the. xxi. Chapiter of the same boke. Thys Cypte is the principall of all Egypte, as London is of England. Into the whiche Ptolomeus the kyng of Egypte, desyred to be remitted by the Romanes, as it appeareth by many Epistles, of Cicero, vnto Lentulus, in the fyfte booke of hys familiar Epistles. Of thys Cypte, doth Herodian make mencion in the. iii. booke of his Historie, and of the Tresor wþrought agaynst the Citezins thereof, by Antonyne. There is another Cypte named Alexandrie, by the mountaynes of Casry, in the Realme of Sogdia, nigh vnto the Bactrians, whych hath on the South the mountaigne Cacausus. Another Alerandrie, buylded lykewyse by Alexander the great, standeth in the Region called Margiana, of a Kyuers name, whiche is Margus. The same hath on the West side Sirania, on the East the Bactrians, and on the South, the Realmes of Parthia, and Aria. Thys Cite was destroyed by ths Barbarous people, and in the same place was a new buylded, by Seleucus the Sonne of Antiochus, who named it Seleucia, as recordeth Plinie, in the xvi. Chapiter of his. vi. booke. Another citie called Alerandrie, in the Countreye of Carmania in Inde, boundyng vpon Persia. Of theise Cityes and countreyes loke Ptolomeus and Plinie.

Altinum loke thys worde Aquileia.

Amphitheater, is a place made to behold plaies in, the which is in fourme round, as yf it were buylded of. ii. Theaters, and therfore is called Amphitheater.

A Theater is made halfe in compasse, betwene the y. corners wherof, is played that whiche men behold, called of the Latinistes Scena. The nexte place vnto it, is called Orchestra, where the Senatours & Maþe Ambassadours do sit. In the midden of the Theater, are the Seates for Knightes, and that place, is named Canea. Rounde aboue the Theater withinfurth are degrees, and steppes, so made, that the hygher they ascend, the longer, and larger they are. Upon the whiche

D. iii.

the

The table

þ people do sit, as every man can get hym place. Marc^o Scaurus (as witnesseth Plinie in the. xxxiiii. booke, the xv. chap.) soz one Playe, which endured. xxx. dayes only, dyd buylde a Theater, the greatest of all other, that were euer made by mans handes. The Scene whereof, was of þre stages, & had. iii. C. l. Pyllers of marble of Affrique: of the whiche, the higher were of one piece, and xxxviii. fote in height. The lower parte of þ Scene was of Marble, and the stage in the myddes of Glasse, which never man heard of before. There was belydes, for þ more gorgious beautyfeng of it. iii. M. Images of Copper, with so much rychelle, Tapistrie of golde, and Tables of auncient & uocable pictures, þ it is almooste incredible to beleue, as wryteth Plinie. The greces wheron men late in the same, did receiue lxxx. M. persons. Caius Julius Cesar, syr^t of all, buil ded an Amphitheater, in the fvelde called Campus Martius: whiche Augustus pulled downe, and in the same place, made a Tombe.

Antioche, is a partie of Siria, boundyng vpon the Royalm^e of Cilicia, as sayeth Plinie, in the xii. chap. of hys syt^t booke. In thys part, is a Cytye of the same name, as wryteth Ptolomeus, in the fourth Table of Asya. Thys is the Cytye, to the whiche Antonyne went, and from thence, to Alexandrie in Egypt. Ther is another Antioche in the countrey of Assyria, where Alexander vanquyshed Darius: the whiche is next vnto Syrya (as witnesseth Plinie, in the. xiiij. chapyter of hys. vi. booke. Amonges the Isles of the Asyan Sea, Plinie in hys. v. booke, the. xxi. Chapyter, sayeth, there is one called Antioche, whiche standeth in the Sea of Panaphilia.

Apoplexie, as saveth Galien in the. v. chapyter of hys thyrd booke of the places affected, is a disease, by the whiche, all a mans synewes, and bawnes, do lose theyz force, of sealyng, and mouyng. Thys dysease com meth sodysnlye, and by the same, a man shall vnethe fetches brethe.

Affrike

of annotations.

Affrike. The Cosmographers do deuide þ Earth into þre partes. That is to wete, Europe, Asie, & Affrike. Europe is seperated from Asie, by the Riuere Tanais and the Lakes called Meotides, wþin þ whiche Tanais doeth fall. And it is deseuered from Asie, by the Sea Mediterrane, so named, for that it is in the myddes of the earthe, or elles, because it is enclosed wþ earth on every syde, sauynge where he hath his issue, betwene the pyllers of Hercules: wherof, the one is in Mauritania, the other in Spayne. Betwene the whiche, Hercules made waie, and passage for the Mediter rane Sea, to ioyne with Thocean. And it hath the none other issue, then betwene those two pyllers. It exten deth towardes the East, as farre as Siria, whiche is in Asie. Towardes the Norþe, vnto the lakes Meotides. On the Sowthe parte, it hath alwaies Aphrique, whiche is sequestred from Asie, by an arm of þ Sea, called Sinus Arabicus. That is th^e Redde Sea, wher by the chyldren of Israell, passed out of Egypte, into the Desertes of Arabie. Europe is muche Norþe, and so is it West in respecte of Asie. And it is the least of the þre partes: conteynynge the Isles of England, and Scotlande, and the ewart Isles thervnto, Spaine, Fraunce, Almayne, Italye, & Grece, wþ the Isles, theyz neyghbours.

Asie conteyneth Asie the lesse, Lydia, Caria, Bythynia, Galatia, Capadocia, Armenia, Cilicia, Darmatia, Assiria, Arabia, Persia, Hircania, Media, Judea, the two Pndes, and all the other countreyes, whiche Ptolome describeth in hys twelue Tables.

Aphrique which is South, conteyneth Mauritanya, Numidia, the countrey of Carthage (whiche so longe tyme, helde warre wþ the Romaynes) Libia, Ethiopia, and Egypt. The Sea, called the great Ocean, en viroueth all these þre partes rounde aboue.

Aquileia is a Cytye scituat^e in þ tenth part of Italye, after the devision, whiche Plinie maketh thereof, in the xvij. Chapyter of the thyrd booke of hys natural Historye, sayinge thus.

Vere

The Table

Here followeth certeyn region of Italie, named Venise, adjacent vnto the Sea Hadriatyque. In this Region, there is a Riuere called Silix, commynge oute of the Taurisane mountaignes, a Towne called Altinum, with a Riuere called Iuuentia, descendyng out of the mountaignes Opitergines, and a Haven of the same name. A towne called Coccozia wyth a Riuere, & a Haven named Rominium. The greate and lytle Tillauentum. Anassum another towne, whereby passeth the Riuere Taurinus. And the Riuers Alsa, Patison, and Turrus, do passe by Aquileia, whiche Citie is distant from the Sea. viij. miles. For the rest, haue recourse to the Text.

Arabie. There are. iij. Arabies. Thone called fertile, or happy. Another called Rockye. And the thyrd, named Desert. All thre verye nygh together, as sayeth Ptolomee. And they are in Asia, nygh vnto the redde Sea, through the whiche the chydren of Israell depar-tyng oute of Egypte passed, and immediatly entered into the Desertes of Arabie.

Armenie is a Realme of Asia. The lesse Armenie sopeneth wyth Capadocia, on the Weste parte. And there is nothyng betweene them, sauyng the mountaignes. On the East part, it is ioyned with Armenie y great: hauyng no more, but the Riuere of Euphrates betwene them.

Towardes the Sowthe, is the mountayne Taurus: whiche maketh separation of Armenie and Cilicia. Towards the North, is the Sea Mediterrane, which in the Strete there, is called Pontus Euxinus. The great Armenie is beyond Euphrates. And hath on the East part the Hircanian Sea, & the mountayne cal-LED Caspius. On the Northe abone it, the Realmes of Colchis, Iberie, and Albanie. And towards the South, Mesopotamia, as Ptolome hath described it, in y. liij. Table of Asia.

Asia. Looke on thys word Aphrique.

Armenians, are people of Arabic, as sayeth Plinie in the xliij. chap. of the vi. booke of hys natural historie.

5.

Bithinie

of annotations

Bithinie is a Royalme of Asia, nigh vnto Thrace betwene whome, & it, ther is nothig, but a streite goulfe of the Sea. In this Royaulme, are many goodly Cities, as Chalcedon, Nicomedia, Apamea, Hesaclea, Nicæa, & other, as sayen Plyn, & Ptolomee.

Bizantium, as it appeareth by the Text, in the beginning of Herodians thyrd Booke, is a Cytye of Thrace, of the whiche, the situacion, and commodities, are sufficienly described in the sayde Booke. It is the samme, which we at this day, call Constantinople.

C.

Capitol is a Hill in Rome, y whiche in olde tyme was called y Mounte of Tarpeius, wherin when thei dygged, to lape the fundacion of Jupiters Temple which was there buylded fowre square on every syde a hundreth foote in heigthe, in the tyme of Tarquinius the proude, laste Bynge of the Romaynes) thei founde a mans heade wyth the face hole unperysched. The Latins call a head, Caput, whereof y place is calle Capitole. The Mounte called Tarpeius, had two lytle Hilles. On the one stode the Temple of Jupiter, & on the other, the Fortresse, or Palacie of Rome, whiche thei called Arx Capitolina.

Cappadoce is a Royaulme of Asie, adiacet on y west part to y Regio called Galatia. And on y East, to Armenie, thus dooth Ptolomee describe it in y first Table of Asye.

Carie. Looke on this wordie Tonie.

Carre is a Cytye of Mesopotamia, as sayeth the Text, which is renowned, & spokē of, through the overthrow of Marcus Crassus, who was slaine, & his Ar- my vanquished by the Parthians, nigh vnto y said Citie, as wryteth Plutarch in y life of Marcus Crassus.

Carting was an vnde-ē exercise, wherin voluptuous Emperours gretely delited. The forme thereof, was to ryde in a Chariot, & with whipping, cause the horses which drew y same, to run very fast to and fro as it liked the. We may call it Chariotting also: other name have I not for the laten wordie of it, whiche is Kurigatio.

Ce. j.

Chalcedon

The Table

Chalcedon is a City of Bithynia, by the Sea side, righte ouer ananst Thrace, and the Cite of Constantynople. There is no more betweene them, as sappeth the Authoure, but a strait of the Sea, called Bosphorus Thractus, or Propontius, or Hellepontus, which are all one, makig seperation of Europe, & Asie,

Circenses were certaine exercisles, plaied, and shewed in a place called Circus, whiche was compassed rounde about with a stonye wall. In thiese plaiers ther used to runne wth horses, & to wassle. Thei were called Circenses, as it were circum enses, þ is to saye enuironned on euery syde wth Swords. For in olde tyme, al the Running, Jousting, Wassling, and Combates of the Romaynes were in places enclosed, on the one side wth Riuers, & on the other syde wth Swords, Glayus, and Hallebardes, to the ende that Cowardes, & Dastardes shuld not flee away wout daunger.

Cohorte Pretoriane, are suche men at Armes, as garde the person of any Capitayne, Duke, Consull, King, or Emperour. For this name Pretor, is ofte tyme taken for a King, Emperour, or Consull.

Colossus. The Latins called every great, and huge Image, Collosus. This Colossus, whereof Heroian speaketh in his firste Booke, was made by a notable wozkemā named Zenodorus, at the commandement of Nero Emperour of ROME. And it was his Image, beynge a hundred and ten foste in heigthe. The same Image was dedicated to the honour of the Sonne, after that the actes of Nero were condēned, and infringed for his cruell Tyranny, as saith Plynie in þ. xxxiii. booke the. vii. Chapiter. Ther was an other Colossus at ROME, which Domitian caused to be made, standing vpon great pillers of Marble.

In the Capitole there was an other Colossus, representinge the Image of Apollo, whiche was. xxxi. cubytes of heigthe, trasported thither, by Marcus Lu-
cullus, from a Cite called Apollonia in the Ryalme of Pótus. Amonges all such huge Images, Plynie,

of annotations

In the lastested Booke, and Chapter, saith þ in Rhodes, there was the Image of the Dane, palles al other in greatness, made by Chares of Lidia, discouer unto Lissippus. The same was. ixx. cubites in heigthe. And fell downe by a meruailouse erthquake. vii. yeres, after it was made. And althoþe it be broken, yet is it at this preset, a thig wonderful to behelde. The Thonne therof, a man can bne the sadome. And his ungers are as bigge as great Images. In þame city of Rhodes, there are an. C. moze Colossi. But not so by gge as this, althoþe the leste of them, were sufficient to win fame, and renawme to the City. For thole, & moze descriptions of the other, haue recourte to the aforesaid Booke, and Chapter of Plynis.

Constantynople. Look on this wörde BIZANTIUM.

Cyrus, King of Persia, was the Sonne of one Cambyses, of an oblique familie in Persia, & Mandane the daughter of Astiages King of Media. Who after ther position of his dreame (by the whiche he vnderstode þ his daughters Sonne shuld be King of all Asye, & that him self shuld lose his Ryalme) caused Cyrus, immediatly after he was borne, to be put furth, & left alone in a Forest, to þ ende, he might be devoured of wylde beastes. But there a Wiche gaue him sucke, & defended hym from Beastes, and Wyres, vntill that the Wynges Sheperde founde hym, carped hym houre to hys wyfe, and gaue her the charge to nouryshe hym. The woman was afterwardes called Spaeon, because amounges the Persians, a Dogge is so named. After that he wared greate, he was called Cyrus, by the Sheperdes his Companions, knownen to be Astiages daughters Sonne, and sente into Persia: where he obtained much credite, and authority. Finally, he assembled an Armye, to make warre vpon Astyages, his Grandefather, from whom he bereft þ Ryalme of Media, vnto the whiche the Persians were subiect. And by thys meanes Cyrus became Renge of Persie, and Media. Before hys tyme the Persians

The Table

had no kinges, but were subiecte unto other Royaulmes. After his victorie against Astages, he vanquished, & toke prisoner, Croesus the King Lidia, which was so riche. But in conclusion him selfe, was ouercomen, and slayne, by Thomyris Quene of Scithia, when he had reigned. xxx. yeres. Unto hym succeeded Cambyses, his Sonne, as Justin, in his first booke mentioneth. Eusebius sayeth, that Cambyses reygned. viii. yeres. Under Cirus Bynge of Persia, by hys owne permisiō, begā the reparaciō of the Temple of Hierusalem: which notwithstanding was discontinued many yeres after. And at y last finished the. vi. yere of Darius Reigne kinge likewise of Persia, as witnesseth the. vi. & vii. Chapiters of Cſd: as in the Bible, and Sabellique in the. vii. Booke of his seconde Enneade. After Cambyses, two Brethren called Magi, usurped y kingdō. viii. Monethes. After whō Darius raigned. xxxvi. yeres. And in the seconde yere of his Reigne, Zorobabell, by his permisiō, renewed the reparacion of the Temple of Hierusalem. This Darius, was nat he, y Alerāder the great vanquished: but that was the. x. king after him, called Dari^o also. In whom the Royaulme of Persia toke hys eānde.

Cyzicum is a Citye of Asye, vpon the Sea syde, in a Royaulme called Mysia the leste, as witnesseth Ptolomee in the fyſt Table of Asye. And so sayeth Plinie in the. xxxii. Chapiter of his. vi. Booke.

D.

Danubie, or Danowē. Loke on Iſter.
Darius loke on these wordes, Alerāder, & Cſr^o. Dionisius the Elder, was a Tirant of Sicile, & Son of Hermocrates, as saith Sabellique. He was verye well learned, as wrieth Plinie: who preferreth none before him, sauig Plato in Philosophye, & Philopen^o in Poetrie, two y notableſt men of learning in all his time. In y same yere y the Kingdō of Athenes ended, and Darius Bynge of Perſe dyed, Dionisius loste his Royaulme, as sayeth Sabellique, in the nynty Booke of hys fyſte Enneade. Wherein he agreeſt not with

of annotations.

Wyth Eusebius. Dyonisius Sonne was likewyſe named Dyonisius the yonger, who was also a Tirant of Sicile, and raygned in a citye called Siracusa: out of the whiche he was expulſed twyſe, ones by Dion: And the ſecond tyme by Timoleon, ſent agaunt hym by the Corinthians. After thys ſeconde expulſion, he kept a ſchol, and taught yonge chylđren at Corinth, as wryteth Valerius Marimus.

E.

Eridanus is a Ruyer of Italye, otherwyſe called Padus, whych cometh (as layth Plinie in y. xvi. chap. the. iij. booke of his natural History) out of a mountaigne called Vesulus. After that, he hideth him ſelfe in the grounde, and iſtreteth out againe in the conſynes of the Foruibienſea. Of all Ruyers ther is none moxe renowned. The Grekes cal it Eridanus. There is no Ruyer besydes, that encreaſeth greater, wrythiſ ſo lytle ſpace. For it hache a merueyloſe abundance of water, falling into y Sea Adriatique. Betwene the cyties of Rauenna, and Altinum, it is verye damageable unto the Countray. For by the ſpace of. vi. Shore myles (as ſayeth Plinie) it doeth ſeparate it ſelfe, into many Ruyers, & Lakes. And because that euery Ruyer is large, and great, they call the ſame ſeven Seas, as witnesſeth Herodyan, in hys eyght booke.

Euphrates. Loke on thys wordē Syrye.

Europe. Loke on thys wordē Aphryque.

G.

Galatians, are thole whiche enhabit the realme of Galatia, which is in Asye, betwene Bithinia & Capadocia, as ſayen Plinie in the laſte chap. of hys fyſth booke, and Ptolomee in y fyſt Table of Asye. The ſame Realme is called also Gallogretia, and the people Gallogreci; because, that when the Gaules came

The Table

to the ayde, and succour of the kyng of Wythynse, they helde and possessed that part of the Ropalme. Wherefore it is so named, as wryteth Sabellique.

Gallus a Ryuer. Looke on theyle wordes Goddesse Desynuntynne.

Ganymedes was Son of Tros king of Phrigia, who had Ilus, Iulus, Alaccus, and Ganimedes. The fables surmise (which is the most common opinion) that Jupiter rauished Ganymedes for his beauty, by an Eagle. But Sabellique in the x. boke of hys syrte Enneade, saith, that Ganymedes the Son of Tros, was rauished by Tantalus kyng of Paphlagonie, to abuse hym. Whereby there arose great warre, betwene the two kynges. And it is most lyke, that being very yonge, he was iniuriously rauished by Tantalus, vnder the signe of the Eagle, where the battayles fought vpon the land, or Sea. Whiche hath bene cause of the inuentiō of the Fable, that sauyeth that the Eagle, by ordynauice of Jupiter, rauished hym.

Gaule or Fraunce. Cesar in his commentaries saith, that Gaule is deuided into thre partes, wherof the Belges helde the one, the Celtes another, and the Aquitans inhabited the thyrd. The Aquitans are seperated from the Celtes, by the Ryuer of Garumna. The Celtes are sequestred from the Belges, by the Ryuers of Marne and Sern. And the Belges are sundred from the Almaignes by the Rhen. In the whiche diuision, Gaule Parbonique is not comprised. Ptolomie in hys fourth Table of Europe, and in the chappeters of the same, dothe deuyde Gaule into fourte partes: apoyntynge Gaule Aquitanyque, to extende as farre as the Ryuer of Loyer. And from Loyer, to the Ryuers of Sern, and Marne, is Gaule named Lugdunensis. And from Sern, vnto Rhen, Gaule Parbonique extendeth it selfe, vnto the Sea Mediterranea, beyonde the Alpes, and the Ryuer Garus, vnto the Pyrenyan Mountaignes. Gaule the rounded, by other-

of annotations.

or otherwyse called Lumberdye, is in the Lymaytes of Itale, and is the same countrey, whiche is named Liguria, herte vnto the Alpes, and the Sea. All the other Gaule, or Fraunce, is called Gaule bering bushe. Gaule Parbonique, was before tyme named Brachata, as sayeth Plinie, in the thyrde boke, and the fourth chapyter.

Goddesse Desynuntynne, is þ same that Cicero in hys booke of the lawes, calleth the Moother Idea, whiche is the selfe same, that the Romaynes name the Moother of the Goddes, and doo greatlye reuerence.

Liue in the . ix. booke of hys seconde warre Parbonique, sayth that they founde in the Sybyline booke, (whiche were perused and redde ouer, because of the often raynyng of stones the same yeaer) that when so euer anye straunger, and forreyne enemye, shoulde moue warre agaynst Itale, he myghte be vanquished, and expelled thence, þf the Moother Idea were transpored to Rome, from a syelde of Phrigia named Pelinus. The whiche to do, the Romaynes sent fiftie Ambassadours, wþt syue greate shypes, called Cynquerenes, to Atalus king of Asie. Who led them to the place called Desynus, deluyered them the holye Stone, whiche the inhabitanites there, called þ Moother of the Goddes, and appoynted them to carye it vnto Rome. It was receyued at the Hauen of Roma, by Publius Scipio, beyng lugged at that tyme, the worthiell manne in all the Cypte, to do the same, caried vnto Rome, and sette in the Temple of Victo-rye, wþthin the Palayce, the . xiiij. daye of Aprill, whiche was celebratyd, and solempnyzed wþt seales, and gyftes, that the people in greate abundance offered vnto the Goddesse. Whiche playes the Romaynes called Megalesia.

The same Goddesse is called Ops, whome they suppose to beþ wyfe of Saturne, called Rhea, by the whiche they understande the earth, that geueth affluence and abundance of all thyng.

þhe

The Table

She is otherwile named Cybele, of the name of a Hyl and cyrpe, of Phrigia where her sacryfices were fyrt instituted. & she is called Cybele, of Cimbals, which signifypeth the Instrumentes, and Soundes, they vsed in the sacryfices. The Poetes laven, that she roade in a Chariot, and had a crown of Towers: wherby they syg iyspe, that the earth hangeth in the ayre, and the world tourmeth alwayes rounde aboue and that the earth hath vpon it Cytyes, and towres, wherein be Towers.

She is called Moother of the Godes, because she engendreth all thyng. She is also called Pales, for she is y Goddess of sheperdes, & her feastes are called Palilia. And she is also surnamed Berecinthia, of a mytaygne of Phrigie called Berecynthes. Accordyng to the diuersytie of her names, she hath dyuers powers, dyuers sacryfices, and dyuers ministers.

Under theys names, Cybele, Berecynthia, Goddess Pelynuntynne, & Moother Ide, because they came of names of places in Phrigia, from whence thys Goddess was broughte to Rome, is no diuersitie of puyllance sygnified.

Thys Goddess hath Priestes, and Ministers, called Galli, by the name of a Riuier, named Gallus in Phrigia. The water wherof, causeth them to be mad that drinke it. Those Priestes be gelded, who beynge stured wyth madnesse, noddyng theiur heades, vp and downe, wthy great noyse of small belles, whych they carped, did prophelye, and tell of thynges to come, in that madnesse. They were otherwile called Corabantes.

3.

Lilium is the same Cytye, that we call Troye the great. Iulus son of Tros, in y countrey called Troas byd buylde thys ritye Iliu, so called of his name. And of the countrey wherin it stode, it was named Troye, fyrt Enneade. The Countrey is ioyning vnto Phri-

gia,

of annotations.

gia on the East, and towardes the West it hath the Sea Helleponique, as Ptolomee hath described it, in his first Table of Asie.

Illiria. The Royalmie of Illiria, described by Ptolomee in his v. Table of Europe, hath on y North Coste, y. ii. Pannones: on y West, y country called Istria. Towards the East, it hath y high Misia. And towards y South, a part of Macedonia. This Royalmie is also named Liburnia, & y part which excedeth towards y high Misia, is called Dalmatia. At this preset, the Illiria Regio is called Sclauonia. Loke Ptolome in y said. v. table of Europe. India. There are ii. Indes, both in Asia, & ioyning togithers, wherof thone maketh an ende of Asie, towards thoric, & is called Inde, beponde the Riuier of Ganges. On this side the Riuier, is Inde, called Inde on this side Ganges, which hath on the East syde, the same Riuier. On the West, the Royalmes of Paropanisades Arachosia, & Gedrosia. On y North, y mountaine Imaus. And on the Southe the Indian Sea, as sayeth Ptolomee in the fyfthe Chapiter of the x. Table of Asye.

Jocasta was y wife of Laius King of Thebes. After whose deceasse, she maried her owne Sonne Dedipus, unwares. And had by him. ii. childre, Etheocles, & Polinices: who fought togithers, after Dedipus death, for the Royalmie of Thebes. And in y same cobate, both y Wetherne slew one an other, as saith Sabellique, in y. viij. Booke of his first Enneade. For this cause, did y Aleradiens, in iugement, call Antonines Mother Jocastat because Antonyne, for to obtayne Thempye alone, had slayne hys Brother Geta, as the. ii. Sones of Jocasta, slew one an other, for the Royalmie of Thebes.

Ionic. Ilyne in the. v. Booke, the. xix. Chap. sayeth, that the Countrey of Lydia, watered ouer wthy the Riuier of Meander, very crooked, and full of tourninges, both extende aboue Ionic: having on y East syde Phrigia, on the North Misia, and on the Southe Caria.

The which Countrey of Lydia, was before called Mysie. By d. descriptiō, y Ptolomee maketh in y first Table of Asie, Ionic is y self same Regio, y is called Lydie, or Mysie. At the lest wile, it is a parte therof: bordering f. l. j. upon

The Table

Upon the Sea, whiche for that cause is called Ionian. The same Ionian Sea, doth extende fro the Bankes of Ionia, unto the bankes of thysle of Sicile. Plinie in the iii. booke, the. xi. Chap. sayeth, that the Grecches deuyded the Ionian Sea, into the Sea of Sicile, and the Sea of Crete, so called, bicause of the nigh Isles. Ptolomee in the v. booke, the seconde Capiter, sayeth, that the Regio propprely called Asia, hath on the North syde Bithinia. On the West, a part of Proponitis, the Sea Helleponique, the Sea Icaria, i the Sea Hyptioique. On y East, the Regids of Licia, Pamphilia, & Galatia. And on the South, the Sea of the Rhodes. In this Region, are espredd. Lidia, & Caria, & other small Koyalmes. In Lidia is Ionia, as it is before saied. And Iouie is ryght ouer aneand an Isle, called Icarie: whercof, the Sea there, is named Icaria. And it is the same, which is called Ionian. Caria is betwene Lidia, & the Sea of y Rhodes. On the West it hath the Sea Icarian, or Hyptioique. And on y East is Licia, ioyned to Pamphilia. Cilicus Sinus, is a reserion, & bendinge of the Sea, which hath on the West, thysle of Cipres. And on the East, Siria, ioynd unto the Bankes of Siria. And on the North syde, is the Countrey of Cilicia. In y plaine by the same tourning of the Sea, is the Citye of Alexandria, buldeed by Alexander y grete, in memorie of y battaile by him wonne, against Darius King of Persia. In this place also, was the battaile betwene Scerus, & Piger. Ister is a great, and meruaylousse Rauer, otherwyse called Danubis, or Danow, comynge oute of a mountayne of Almayne, named Arnoba. Beyonde the Alpes, it passeth by Iunumerable Countreis. The further it ranneh, the more it increaseth, retēining the name of Danow, vntyll it commeth by the Countrey of Illiria, nowe called Sclavanie, where he chaungeth hys name, and is called Ister. And receyuinge hys increase, of. Ir. Riuers, which fall into hym, he departeth from y earth, and entreth into the Sea Pontique, by. vi. grete armes, as sayeth Plynpe, in the. iii. booke, the. xi. Chapiter, of his Historie naturall.

L.

Lodicea

of annotations.

Lodicea, is a Cypte of Siria, nigh unto the Sea, and not very farre distant from Antioche: whyche is also in Siria, but further from the Sea, as myt-
t. neseth Ptolomee, in the. iii. Table of Asye.

Latium, is a parte of Italye, in the whyche standen Rome, Tusculum, Praeneste, Ardea, Tibur, and many other Cities, as writeth Ptolomee, in the syxte Chapiter, of the syrte Table of Europe. Those that enhabyte this parte of Italy, are by the Romaynes called Latini.

Laurenum is a Cypte of Italye, in the same parte that is called Latium, nigh unto Hostia. By Lauren-
tum, there is a forest, sacred unto the Sonne, as sayeth Plynpe, in the. v. Chapiter of his thyde booke.

Liber Pater, in Englyshe Free father, is the selfe same God, that we call Apollo, as saith Macrobius, in his Saturnales, after Aristotle, for diuerse causes: and amonges other, bicause that in Thrace, there is a Temple, and Oratory, dedicated unto Liber: wherin answeres, and Prophesyes are rendered. But in the same Temple, those whyche oughte to Prophete, do drinke Wyne excessively, as they whyche render oracles in the Cypte of Clarium, after thei haue dronke muche wa-
ter. The Lacedemonyens, in the sacryfyses whyche they made to Apollo, ware Garlandes of Iunc, as yf they dyd sacrifice to Bacchus. The Boetians, assyrmyngs that the Hell Parnassus was sacred unto Apollo, dyd alwayes there kepe the Oracle of Del-
phus, and the Caues of Bacchus, dedicated unto the same G D D. For thys cause, in that Hell, were the sa-
crysces made unto Apollo, and Liber Pater.

In thys Hell also, where the Bacchana-
les celebraytes, ones in two yeaer: whyche shewed, that Apollo, Lyber, and Bacchus, were but one G D D. And he was called Lyber, that is to say, Frea, bicause the Sonne, whyche we call Apollo, doth
frely,

F. f. y.

The Table

frealy, and without subiection, tourne, & compasse the woylde: beyng sometimes highe, and sometymes lowe, and kepyng his course dierente wayes.

Lybie is a Region of Aphrique: And it is expedient to know, that there are. ii. Libies. For Ptolomee in the. vi. Chapitre of his. iii. Table of Aphrique, setteth one Libye, soyned with Egypce, & the Marmarike Region. And saith y Egypce, & the Marmarike Region, haue on the West part, the Ryalme of Cirenia: folowyng the continuation of one Lyne, whiche draweth by a Citys called Darins, that standeth vpon the Egyptian Sea. And in the. vi. Chap. of the. iii. Table of Aphrique, he setteth an other Libye, called Libye the Inner, whiche hath on the North, the seconde Mauritane, Aphrique y lesse, & the Cirenayake Region. On the East, a parte of the Marmarike Region, & Ethiopia, whiche is vnder Egypce. Towardes the South, it hath Ethiopia y Inner. And towardes y west, it hath y west Sea. For more descriptiō hereof. looke Ptolomee i y forsaid Chap. & tables.

Lydie is a Countrie of Asia, vpon the Egean Sea, betwene Phrygia, & Caria. This Countrey hath. ii. Riner of great fame. The one of them, is on the Northe coste, & called Pactolus, wherin are founde many baynes of Golde. And thother is in the South syde, & called Meander, which is very crooked, & bēding in & oute. looke Ptolomee, in the syrie Table of Asye.

P.

Manritanie. Ptolomee in his first Table of Affrike appointeth. ii. Mauritanes. Thone whereof, is more West, right ouer aneant Spaine Betique, and called Mauritania Triganica. Thother beinge more nere Thorient, is named Mauritania Cesariensis, and on the East parte soyned vnto Numidia.

Medes, be the people of the Ryalme called Media. Ptolomee in his. vi. booke, the secōde Chap. sayeth that this Regiō hath on y North cost, a part of the Hircanīa Sea. On the West, y grete Armenie, and Asie. On the

of anno tations.

On the Easte Hircanīe, & Parthie. And towardes the Southe, it hath the region called Corinthena. This is this regiō described in the. vi. table of Asie. Plinie in the vi. booke, the. xvii. chap. sayeth that Marcus Agrippa sayd, y Media, Parthia, & the countrey of Perse, had en the East the riuere Indus. On the West the riuere Cygris. On the Northe Taurus, & Cacausus. And on the South the redde Sea.

Media. looke on the wende Medes.

Mesopotamie, is a ryalme of Asie, betwene the riuers of Euphrates, & Tigris, as sayth Plinie, in y. xii. chap. of the. vi. booke. And in the. vi. booke, the. xvii. chap. he sayeth, that all the countrey of Mesopotamie was subiect vnto the Affricans. looke more en thyd woyde Syrys. Misien. The hygh Misie, as Ptolomee hath described it, in the ninth table of Europe, is boydng vpon Thracie on the East part. On the South vnto a lytle Ryalme named Dardania, which is aboue Macedonia. And on North vnto the Riuere of Danowe. The lowe Misie is nygh vnto y falling of Danowe, in the sea called Pontus Euxinus. looke on this woyd Propontys. The Misien are those, which inhabit these. ii. regions. Plinie in the. xvi. chap. the thirde booke, called these ryalme Misia. Ther are. ii. other in Asie, after the description that Ptolomee maketh in the syrie Table of Asie. Thone called Misia the more, & thother Misia the lesse: both ioyning to Phrygia, vpon the Helleponian Sea.

P.

Icea is a cytē of Bithynie, as sayen Ptolomee, and Plinie.

Nicomedie is a Cytē nygh vnto the Sea, in the Ryalme of Bithynie.

Numidia is a countrey in Affrike, betwene Mauritanie, & the countrey of Carthage, after the descriptiō of Ptolomee, in the. vi. table of Asyrie. Thys countrey was very much renowned, throught the vertue of Massinissa whs was king sometyme therof. Thinhabitantes are called Numidians, or Nomades, because y often tynies they chaūge theyr habitations, & carry theyr householdes fro one place to another in wagōs, as saith Plinie in y

F. iii.

thirde

The table

Thyrd chap. the. v. boke of hys naturall Histoyre, & Sa-
bellique in the fyfth boke of hys. v. Cimade. D.

Orgia be sacrifices, made aswell unto the Moother
of the Goddes, as unto Bacchus, & other Goddes,
by the prestes called Galli, that are madde.

Ocean is the great Sea, that enuironeth al y earthe,
and ioyneth hym self w the Mediterrane Sea, betwens
the pylles of Hercules. Thone wherof is in Maurita-
nia, & called Abilla. And other in Spayne named Cal-
pe. The Mediterrane Sea, is enclosed w earth on every
syde: that is to say, on the right side wyth Aſſyrie, and
on the lefte syde, wyth Europe and Asie. P.

Pannone. Ptolomee in y. v. table of Europe, doth
descriue it. Pannones, ioyning one to another.
Thone of the called the high Pannone, boundeth
on the West, vpo a royalme of olde time called Noricū,
& at this present Bauiers. Other called y low Pan-
none, nigh ioyninge unto the higher, stretcheth to the
ryuer of Danow. Of y which riuere, declining towards
the South, that part which receaueth the riuere Haus,
doth eand the lower Pannone on the East. And on the
South, drawynge towardes y Hadriatique Sea, are the
realmes of Illiria, or Sciauonie, & Dalmatia. In these
regions, there be. ii. riuers, Drauus, & Daus. Drauus,
which is the more swyft, cometh out of the countrey of
Bauiers. And Daus which runneth more slowly, out
of y Alpes Carnicyn, as saith Plinie, in the thyrd boke
the. v. chap. of hys naturall Histoyre.

Panthers are beastes very cruel, as y conuentio of the
word doth sufficienly shew: which signifieth all cruel.
The skinnes of these beastes are spotted ouer, w rounde
white spots. And there is no beast so notably spotted, as
y Panther, & y Tigre. These Panthers do lassur woder-
ful swete. And for their lassure, other beastes, resorte
unto the. But yet they are afard of y Panther syerce
toke. Wherfore y Panther hideth his head, & suffreth al
y rest of his bodie to be loked on, y he mai the better take
his pray of the other beastes being amased. There is no
great difference betwene y Panther, & the Leopard, sa-
wyng y the Panther is moxe white. And Plinie in hys
v. b.

of annotations.

vii. boke, the. xvi. chap. sayth that he coulde never fynde
other difference. In the same chap. he telleth a meruay-
lous tale of a Panther, which remyd the godd turne
that a man had before done unto him. In Sorie, and in
Aſſyrie there be many of these beastes.

Parchians. The royalme of Parthia, as Ptolomee
describeth it, in his. v. Table of Iſt, stretcheth on the
North unto Hircanie, & to y mountaignes betwene the.
On y South it hath Carmania. On y East the Ariene.
On y West the Medes. And this regis is enuironed w
hills on al partes. So saith Plinie, in the. vi. boke p. xv.
chap. Who saith also, y the Parthians haue. viii. kyng-
domis. And their Provinces are betwene the red sea, on
y South, & the Hircanīa sea on y North. xi. of the be be-
yond Armenia, & the mountaignes called Caspī, & do ex-
tend along by the Caspian sea, unto the Deichians: dra-
wing towards y sea. And these realmes be called y high
realmes. Other y low realmes. The Parthians, whiche
are not in y firste description, are called Nomades.

Patraclus the feend of Achylles, was in the warres
betwene the Grekes, & the Troyans, & there slayne by
Hector: the sonne of Priamus kyng of Troy.
Perynthiens are a people of Thrace, wherin standeth
a citie called Perinthus, whiſt y which ther is a forteſſe
called Bizia, ſome time beloſing to y kings of Thrace.
In this royalme, there are no Swalowes, for y offence
of Tereus kyng of Thrace, as saith Plinie, in y. vi. cap.
the. viii. boke of his naturall hilſoy. Chosſeſe was this.
His wife named Progne, y king of Athenes daughter,
had a ſiſter which hight Philomela: whom he greatly
desired to ſee. And Tereus to please her wile, promyſed
to ſetthe her ſiſter. In bringing of her, he defloured her.
And to y end, ſhe ſhuld not diſclose it to any perſon, he cut
out her ſtoge, ſhot her vp in a ſecret place, & told Progne
y ſhe died by y way. But Philomela wrote y blode in a
kerchief all the matter, & ſent it unto Progne her ſiſter.
Wha being chaufed w ire for y ſame, ſew a little childe
called Itis, which ſhe had by Tereus, & preſented it him
to eate. Tereus perceiving y matter, purſued her. And
ſhe ſleing away was turned into a Swalowe, Tereus
him ſelfe into a Lapwinge, and Itis into a ſeauntie.

The table

Pesynus. Loke on these wordes Goddesse Pesinutine. Phari. Pharus is an Isle in the sea of Egypt, wherein standeth a cytēe buylde by Alexander the great, ouer aneant Alexandria, which was lykewyse buylde by the same Alexander. The Isle Pharus is so nyghe vnto Egypt & Alexandria, that at thys day, there is no more betwene the, but a bridge to passe fro thone to thother, as sayth Plinte, in the. xi. chap. of hys thyrde boke. In the cytēe of Pharus, Ptolomeus Philadelphus the kyng, made a meruavlous hygh Tower, whiche is numbred amonget the meruapestes of the world: vpon the whiche there is alwayes a great burnyng light, to shew the haun vnto them that saile by night on the Seas. And because that thys lyght is so renowned, many doo call all other Towers, whiche haue fyre and lyght in the after that sort, Phari, as our present Author doth him selfe. Iheronim. Looke on thys woyde Syrpe.

Wrigie is a countrey of Asie, whiche boundeth on the Cest vpon the countrey of Troye y great. And as sayth Plinte, in the. v. boke, the. xxxii. chap. Thys countrey is iwynnge to Galatia on the Northe. On the Southe it hath Lydie onie, Pyltie, and Mygdonie. And on y East it toucheth the countrey of Capvadoce. Ptolome describeth thys countrey in the fyfth Table of Asie, and dothe not alot vnto it so great a compasse.

Pitanie is as muche to saye, as Laconique, or Lacedemonien: because Pytanias was the father of Thrasibulus the Lacedemonien, whs was slayne in syghting valiauntlye in the warre. After hys decease, Pytanias shewed hym selfe very graue, and prudent, saying that it was a rare thynge to dye so well. Wherefore he wylled hys countrey men, not to wepe for hys death, because he dyed valiauntlye as it became a Lacedemonian. So sayth Ausonius the Poete in an Epigrame. Ther was another Thrasibulus of Athenes, whiche had a boyce very loude, and vrgge, of whome Plutarque speaketh in the lyfe of Alcybades.

Pontus. Loke on thys woyde Propontis.

Proconsull. In the tyme that Posthumus Albus, and Apurius Fullius, were Consulles, and warre was made

¶ anno facions

made agaist the people called Equi dwelling in Italy, which warre was unfortunat to the Romaines, Titus Quintus, was syrP created Proconsul, to goo and ayde one of the Consulles, whiche was besieged: to the ende, that the other Consull myghte remayne at Rome, & leuy more me. And this Proconsull, had. vi. Sergeats geeng before him, with mases. His owne oxnametes were like unto the Consulles. Fr̄s that tyme forwardes, it was ordeined, that those which had bene Consulles one yere, shuld the next yere foloweng be Proconsulles, for to ge into the Provinces. And every of them had hys Liuenant, which was called Legatus, to assisse him in hys affaires. The Proconsull had iurisdiction onely in the Province givuen vnto him, but that was nat voluntary, as to infranchise a bondeman. The syrP day of Januari yere, did y Romaines chose two Consulles, which during thole yere foloweng, had as muche authoritee, as Emperour. And because thei coulde not be in all places, when neade required, thei sent their Proconsulles into the Provinces, which had there as greate authoritee, as if y Consulles had bene present. This word Proconsull also sygnifyseth hym, whiche is in steade of the Consull, and dothe that, that the Consull shoulde doo, as sayeth Senestella, and Pamponius Letus, of the Ro mayne Magistrates.

¶ Prodigouse tokes, were signes, which ofte tmes hap pened naturally. Neuerthelesse thei betokened one my shap, or other. Wherefore some do saye y prodigious is deruyed of that whiche oughte to be feared, as the shge of the Harpie called Celeno, wherof Airgile speketh. Such are the singinge of a Rauen, & the meetinge of a weesel, when a ma goeth forth of his house. Thise, and suche other lyke, did men in olde tyme, accepte monstroule, and signifysing some calamytie to ensue.

¶ Propontis is a part of the Mediterane sea, whiche is deuided into diverse partes. For Pontus is a parte of the same sea, & Propontis is a parte of Pontus. Plinte in the. iii. boke. p. xij. Chapter, saith y the fyrste parte of the sea, which is betwene Thrace, & Asie, (where Terees made a bridge to passe ouer his Army) is called Helles

Eg. i.

ponctus

The Table.

pontus. And that is, a small armie of þ Sea, very strayne. After þ it is somewhat brode, & then retourneth into a narowe strayne again. This Sea, þ is the broder parte, is called Propontis, and the streite is named Bosphorus Thracius: beyng in bredthe. v. paces onely. Duer thys streite, Darius king of Serse, & father of Xerxes, passed his armie vpon a sydge. In exceding further towards the North, beynde Bosphorus Thracius, the Sea doth enlarge him selfe wonderfully, & is calld Pontus Cimmerius. And after þ it retourneth to a strait again, & is calld Bosphorus Cimmerius, whiche is thissue of one of the Lakes Meotides, þ is the last part of þ Mediterranean Sea, towardes the Northe. All thiese Seas aboue specified, are partes of the Sea Pontus.

Ptolomeus, after he had expelled Antigonus þ Sone of Demetrius, helde the Royallme of Macedonie, as sateth Sappelique, in the. viii. booke of his. iii. Emeade. He sayned him selfe to be amozouse of hys owne Sister Arsinor, and that he desyred to haue her to wyse. But when she had condescended to the same, he shewd apparauntly, after his receite into the City of Cassandria, that his purpose was, to bereue his syster of the Citye, and to slea the chyldyn that she hadde by Lysymachus her fyfte husbande: whome he slewe in their Mothers armes. At the lasse, he was vanquished by the Gaules, vnder the leading of Welgus theyr Capitaine, take prisoner, and beheaded, and his heade pitched vpon a poll, to feare the Macedones withall.

¶ Pyrrhichius is a foote, or measure, composed of two shorte sillables, so called, by the name of Pyrrhus, king of the Royallme called Cyprus, whiche is nyghe vnto Thessalie, and beneath Macedonie. For that by him was inuented a kynde of daunsynge, called Pyrrhichius, as sayeth Plinie in, the. vi. Chap. of the. vii. Booke. The which leaping, or daunsing, was by mouyng, and measure of two shorte sillables, wherof Herodian in hys fourthe Booke, maketh mencion.

¶

Rhenus. Looke on this woordc. The Rhen.

S.

Sarmates

of annotations.

Sarmates are the people, and inhabitautes of the Regions, Sarmatiques. Plinie, and Ptolome saye, þen there are two Sarmaties, one in Europe, and other in Asie. And bothe nyghe vnto the Riuier Tanais whiche diuideth Europe, and Asie, and nyghe vnto the Lakes Meotides, whereinto Tanais dothe fall. Ptolomee in the. v. Chapiter of hys. iii. Booke sayeth, that Sarmatia of Europe, excedeth towards þ North, as farre as the great Ocean, which in that part is calld the Sarmatique Ocean. Towards the West, vnto the Riuier named Tisula. Towards the Southe, vnto the mountaynes Sarmatiques, which make separaciō of Sarmatia, and the countrey of Dace, and the lower Mysie. Towards the East, vnto a streite plot of yearth, named Isthm⁹ of þ Lake, or Riuier, Bicis. And it hath on the one syde, the lakes Meotides, and the Riuier of Tanais. And in the. v. Booke, the. ix. Chapiter Ptolome saith that Sarmatia which is in Asie, hath on the Northe, a Lande vnknowē. On the West it hath Sarmatia of Europe, vnto the heade, and the Riuier selfe of Tanais. On the East the Lakes Meotides, vnto the streite of the Sea, called Cimmerius. On the Southe, it hath a parte of the Mediterranean Sea, called Curius Pontus, which is verye nygh vnto þ Lakes Meotides, and it strecheth from thence, vnto the Riuier Corar. And from the Riuier Corar, aboue the Regions of Colchis, Iberie, & Albanie, vnto þ Hircanien Sea, whi che is otherwyse named the Caspian Sea. And on the East it hath a parte of the same Hircanien Sea, and the Riuier of Iba, vntyll that it entreth into Sarmatia, where Sarmatia stretcheth vnto the Scithians. Plinie, in the. iii. booke the. vii. Chapiter sayeth that the Greces dothe call them Sarmates, that we name Sarmates, and that the name of Scithians, passeth vnto the Sarmates, and is the Almyynes.

Saturnales were feastes, and sacrifices of Saturne instituted, and ordained sylyte by Janus, to the honour of Saturne, who taughte hym to till the earthe. And after Saturnes decease, he vedyated an aultare, and sacrifices vnto hym, whiche are called Saturnales.

¶ g. i.

The

. The Table

The anciēt fāthers did solempnize thiese feastes onē day only in the yere, that is to weete, in December, the viiiij. Calendes of Januāry. But after y Ceasar had ad- ded. viij. dayes more vnto that moneth, the feastes were celebrated, the. xvi. Calendes of Januāry. Which caused, that the common people, beynig ignozaunt of these daies, did celebrazate the feastes many tymes in the yere. Many Anthours do affirme, that in olde tyme, the Pas-turales endured. viij. dayes, during the which feastes, the Seruantes, & Wōmen, had as grete auctoritatis as their Maisters, and had lycence, to doo what lyked them selues beste. So saith Maerobins, in the firſte Booke, the. vi. Chap. of hys Saturnales.

¶ Peculer playes were celebrazated ones in three ages, whiche was thze hundred yeres.

¶ Septentrion. It is certayne, as saith Aulus Gel- lius in the ſeconde Booke, the. xxiij. Chapiter of his At- tique nyghtes, that the heauen hath ſoure Regions. That is to ſave the Oriente, Occidente, Meridionall, and Septentrion. The Meridionall, or South, & Septe- trion, or Northe, are alwayes remayning in their own places. And the Northe, is in that place of the Heauen, which is ryght opposite to the South, whiche is in the middes betwene the Oriente, and the Occident where the Sonne neuer cometh. The Orient is very variable. For in the Sommer the Sonne ryſeth in that place, from whence commeth the wynde Eize, whiche is ſome- what towardes the Northe. In the myddle, or meane dayes, the Sonne ryſeth where the wynde Curus is, And in the ſhortefſt daies, it ryſeth towards the South, in the ſame part, y the wind called Vulturnus, or other wyſe Curonotus is. And as there are. iii. riſiges, eue ſo are there thre ſettinges, or descendinges, likewyſe men- tioned, and thre windes cumming fro the ſame thre ſettinges. That is to weete Caurus, named by y Greekes Argestes, blowing righte againſte the wynde Eize. Fauonius, or Zephirus, againſte Curus. And Aſſe- cus, named by the Greekes Libs; againſte Vulturnus.

The

of annotations.

The wynde which cometh fro the South, because y the South chaūgeth not, is one, & in Latin called Auster, in Greekes Notas, because it is moyſte. The Northe parte, by like reaſon, hath one onely wynde, which bloweth againſte Auster. This name Septentrion, as ſaith Aulus Cellius, in the Chapiter laſt cited, commeth of that, that. viij. Starres doo make a ſigne in the heauē in forme of a wayne, & are yoked to labour, or elles because the iii. next starres, that a man may ſe, in the Northe, nigh one vnto an other, do make as it were a triangle, and thys ſygne is ryght opposite vnto the South.

¶ Sirmium is a Cypte of the lewer Pannone towardes the hygh Nylē, drawinge to the East. It is be- yonde y Riuere of Danewe, as ſaith Ptolomee in the. xvi. Chap. of his thyrde booke Plynie, in the. xxv. chap. of his thyrde booke, ſaith y a Riuere called Bacuntius ente- reth into y Riuere, ſaus, nygh vnto the City Sirmiu.

¶ Syrie, as Ptolomee deſcribeth it in the. iiii. Table of Aſye is ſeperated from Armenie on the Northe, by the mountaigne Taurus. On the South is Arabie: on y West ſtretchyng towardes y Isle of Cypre, is y Sea of Sirie, which is now called y Sea of Phoenicia. And on the East is Mesopotamie, Plynie in y. v. booke the. vii. Chapiter ſaith that Syrie was the greatest of all the Provinces, & therfore had y name of al Revalme, whiche wer ſubiect vnto it. For towardes Arabie it was called Ju- dea, or Juſy Palestine, Phoenice: & more inwardē Da- mascene. In ſtretching towardes y South, it is called Ba- bilone. And betwene y Riuers of Tigris, & Euphrates, it is named Mesopotamie. Beyōd y Mountain Taur, it is called Sophene, where Euphrates is deuided into. ii. partes. And beyond Armenia it is called Assyrie. On y part where it boundeth vpō Cilicia, it is called Antioche. The part of Syrie, which lyeth along the ſea coaſt, are the countreyes of Idumea, & Judea. And in ſtretchinge more hygher towardes the Northe, is the countrey of Phoenice. And after it is more neare Euphrates, it is cal- led Sirie, as ſaith Plynie, in deuiding Sirie more erui- ſtely. All the Sea which is nygh thys part, is called the Phoenician Sea. The people of Phoenicia, haſte bene
Eg. iii. meruay-

The table

meruaylouye renowned, for that they were the syngers
Inuenteres of letters, of Astrologic, & of making shypes,
and all engens of warre.

Taurus is a Mountaygne in Asie, meruaylouse
huge, & great, as sayeth Plinie, in the. xv. chap.
the. v. boke, of hys natural historye. For he laith,
that hys begynnyng is vpon the bancke of the Orien-
tal Sea, and passeth from thence by many peoples, and
Countreys: makynge separation betwene them. At his
begynnyng, which is at the Indian Sea, he hath on the
ryght syde the North, and on the leste syde the Southe,
stretchynge towards to y West, by the middes of Asie,
saynnge where he encontraith the Sea. After that, he
bendeth towardes the North, and fetcheth a great com-
passe, on thone syde. Then he stretcheth towardes the
Phoenician Sea. On thothe side, towards y Pontian
Sea, and on another parte, to the Hircanian Sea. And
he goeth verye nygh vnto the Lake Mecotide. And after
he hathe verye muche bowed, and tourned hym selfe, he
in the North. And all the way as he passeth, he hath di-
named Imaus, after that, Paropanisus, Circius, Cha-
mbades, and manye other names. Where he is most
byghest, he is called Cacanus, which is aboue y royal-
cheth out hys armes, as yf he woulde embrase the Sea,
he is named Harpeds, Cozacesius, & Cragus. Wher he
hath portes for separation, and passage, albeit the same
be trenched, & naturally opened, yet is it all one Mount-
aygne. Those portes are called in one place Armeni-
Caspia, nigh vnts the people called Caspys, who are
in another place called the Portes of Cylpeye. And al-
thoug it hath in oþers places oþers names, yet is it
ques, Thus sayeth Plinie, in the place afores alegged.
Thus sayeth Plinie, in the place afores alegged.
Thus sayeth Plinie, in the place afores alegged.

of annotations.

doeth appoynte the lymytes, and boundes of the Ro-
mayne Empyre.

Charter. Looke on thy worde Amphitheater.

Charter. Looke on thy worde Aegean, because
that in the same Sea are manye Iles, so nygh one ano-
ther, that a farre of, they seeme to be boates, which the
Grekes call Egas, or because that Aegea Queen
of the Amazones was therein drowned, or elles for that
Aegaeus the father of Theseus, threwe hym selfe head-
longe into it, as sayth Heritus Pompeius.

Charter. Looke on thy worde Ionie.

Charter. Cesar in hys commentaries sayth, that
Gaule Belgique extendeth on the East, vnto the Khe-
in. And beyonde it, are the Almargnes, and thereby the
Khein doeth deuyle Gaule Belgique, from the Al-
margnes. In Gaule Belgique are compyssed the cou-
treys of Lorrain, Lurenbourg, Guelders, & Flan-
ders. Thys Ryuer commeth out of the Alpes, and fal-
leth into the Sea of Flanders. Before his entry into
the Sea, he maketh an Isle, whiche is the countrey of
Hollande, nyghe vnto the whiche, is the countrey of
Guelders, bendyng towardes the head of the same Ry-
uer. Beyonde it is Lurenbourg, and Lorrain, whiche
is seperated from Lurenbourg, by y River of Melle
whiche cometh out of y mountaygne Dogelus, and fal-
leth into the Khein. Out of the same mountaygne com-
meth the Meuse, whiche runneth lykewyse into the
Flemyngha sea. Betwene the Meuse, and the Ryuer of
Somme towardes the Sea, is the countrey of Fland-
ers, whiche is seperated from Fraunce, by the sayde
Ryuer of Somme, as it is apparauntlye described, and
figured, in the newe Table adioyned vnto the Tables
of Ptolomee.

Charter. men at armes Pætorian. Looke on these wordes
Cohorte Pætorian.

Charter. The seuen Seas. Looke on thy words
Eridanus.

Charter. The Tygre. Looke on thy worde Tygris.

Charter. The Tichhenian Sea, is y low Sea, which excedeth
alonge

The table

alonge by Italie nigh vnto the coste of Hoscse. And is so called by the name of Tyrhenus, sonne of Arys, and brother of Lidus, kyng of Lydie, who came into Italy: and with his people inhabited that part of Italy, which is vpon the lowe sea, whereby the Region is also called Tyrhenie. After, it was called Tuscie, and Hetrurie, as sayeth Sabellique.

Thrace is Ryalme of Europe, in the furthest part thereof, towardes the Orient. The which Realme, hath on the North the lower Misie. On the West the higher Misie, and a part of Macedonie. On the East, the sea named Propontis, and the strete of the sea called Bosporus Thracius, whiche maketh separation betwene Europe, and Asie, as sayth Ptolomee in the xi. chapter of the nyng Table of Europe.

A Tribune is as much to saye, as Maister, Gouernour, or Capitayne. And it commeth of this word Tribus, so that the people of Rome, was fyfte deuyded into partes, which they called Tribus. And the chiefe Gouernours and Capitaines of the men at armes, elected out of those partes, were called Tribuni, as saith Marro treatinges of the Latyn tonge saith. Aegecius in the. iij. booke, & the vii. chap. of the feates of warre. A Tribune of men at armes, had the charge of a band in an armie, wherin were as many horsmenas sole men. As of the fyfth Cohort of a Legion: which Cohorte, was the greatest, the princpal, and the best fylled wth sage, discret, valyaunt, and experte warryous. In the same were. i. t. C. sole men, and. C. xxxii. men at armes on horsebacke.

The Capytayne of thys Cohorte, was called the Tribune of the men at armes: who had vnder hym other Captyaines, and Centurions, as well of fotemen, as of horsmen. The other Cohortes of a Legion, whyche were nyne, lesse then the fyfth, were conducted eyther by the Trybunes, or by the Provolles. Budeus in his cornicularie vpon the Pandectes, & Diggles, sayeth that we maye call a Trybune of men at armes, a Marshall. Aegecius in the seconde booke, the twelueyth chapter, sayeth, that the honour of the Trybune of men at armes, was when the men at armes were honestly, and cleanly

of annotacions

cleanelye apparelled, well armed, and theyr harness wel foun byshed, and thynynge bryghte, and when they were well instructed, & exercised in the feates of warre. The auctoritye and power of thys Magistrate, was so whyle so greate, that the Trybunes of the men at armes, had ones the gouernance, and administration, of the Romayne common wealthe. And there was no Magistrate, or Dygnitye more hygher then thys. When there were no Consulles, whyche was aboute thre score and ten yeres, after the kynges were expellid out of Rome, the Common weale was ruled ffe yeares by the Trybunes. After the fyue yeares were expellid, Consulles were agayne created, as sayth Pomponius Letus. Dyuers tymes the Trybunes were remoored vnto dygnitye agayne, as sayth Titus Livius, and they had the auctoritye of the Consulles.

Sy. If they were thre, then four, then tenne, and then twentye, some tyme lesse, some tyme more. In Rome ther e were other Trybunes, whiche were named Trybunes of the people, who were created the yeare, that Auius Virginius, & Titus Metellus Geminus, were Consulles, whyche was the. xvi. yeare after the expulsion of y kinges. At which time the common people, being ouercharged, and vred wth debtes (after that the Senatours and noble men of Rome, had often tymes promysed to release, and discharge theym thereof, and then decepued theym) seperated them selues from the Senatours. But Menenius Agrippa, one of the tenne Ambassadours sente vnto the people, whyche were assembled in ths field, reduced them by an oracion into amitye, created y Trybunes of y people, who were cholen out of the common people them selues. This dignite was sacred, & inviolable, not subiect vnto the Consulles, as other officers were. The Tribunes of the people sat in the Senate house, at the very entry ther e. And that, that the Consulles decreed, thei sometyme allowed, and sometime rejected. And bicause thei vpheld, and mayntained the people, and styrred them oftentimes against the Senatours, and noble men of Rome, ther e rase many Crosse batayles betwene them. In the

Vh. tyme

The Table

yme of the Kinges, there were Tribunes whiche were Captaines of a hundred horsemen, and were called Tribuni Celorum. Ther were also other Tribunes which had the Charge of the Recet, & Custody, of all Trybute money, and were called Tribuni Aerarii, as muche to save, as the Tribunes of the Tresoure.

Tigris is a Riuier, which hath his beginnyng in the Royalmie of Armenie the great. At the first he runneth slowly, and where he beginneth to be swifte, he is called Tigris, for so do the Medes call an Arowe. He falleth in to a Lake, called Arthusa, but yet it medleth nat w the come togithers. But the Riuier passeth throughte, cleane vnylike the Lake, either in course, or colour. At his mesing w the Mountaine Taurus, he hydeth hym selfe w in the earth, and runneth vnder the Mountayne, & then appeareth agayne on the other syde. The place is called Zoroanda. And that it is the same Riuier, whiche hydde hym selfe in the gronde, it doth manifestly apeare. For when he commeth furth agayne, he bringeth any thing with hym, that was cast into hym, on the other syde the Hull. He passeth afterwardes, by an other Lake named Thesbidis, and then hideth him self in the earth again. After his next comming furthe, he is deuided into two partes, wherof thone runneth into Euphrates, and so into the Persian Sea. This Riuier maketh manye tornynges, and resseyvons, and separateth Mesopotamia fro Assirie. Looke Plinie, the. vi. Boke, the. xvii. Chap. **T**yrus is a Cytie of Phoenice, vpon the same Sea, that Laodicea is. All the same Sea, is attributed vnto the Phoenicians, as it is sayd in this word Syrie.

¶.

Vesta is a Goddess, which was daughter of Saturne, vnto whō the Virgines vestalles were consecrated. Numa Pompilius did firste institute in Rome those Virgins, neuertheles the same Kelygi on was so auncient, that it came from the Troyans, to the Albaynes, and from them to the Romaynes.

Theys

of annotations.

Theyz office, & profession, was to make sacrifice for the Romayne people, vnto þ Goddess Vesta. And to garde the eternall & inextingible fyre. Ther were. i. Goddesses of thys name Vesta. The one was. Moether of Saturne, by the which we understand the earth. Therother was daughter of Saturne, which is she, that thei name the Vixgyn, by whome we understande the fyre, as sayth Duide. Understanb nethunge by Vesta sayth he but the lively, & burning fyre, wherof thou seest no ho- dy to be engendred. She is therfore accepted a Virgin, because she doth not engender. The Romaines sent as far as Phrigia, for the Image of this Goddess Vesta, the which was brought, & set in þ Temple of Ticiope, which is in the Palacie, vnto whō thole vixgyns were sacred, that had theyz house herte by the Temple. And were. xx. in numbre. Aulus Cellius in the. xii. chap. the fyfth boke of his Attique nightes sayeth, þ the high Bishop toke that Vixgyn whiche shold be sacred, by the hand, called her Amata (because the fyfth vixgyn, instituted by Numa Pompilius, was so named) and did set her into þ College of the Vestale vixgyns: where, from thence forwarde, she was wout emancipation, exempte from her fathers rule, & had power to make her Testa-ment. Bf ye wil know, of what age, of wht at parentes, & of what stature, w the qualite of her person, and vnder what wordes, the highe Bishoppe dyd admitt a Vestale Vixgyn into the order, Looke Aulus Cellius, in the sayde Booke and Chapyter.

¶ The ende of the Anno-
tations.

CImprynted at London, in Fleet Strete, by
Wyllyam Coplande, at the Sygne
of the Rose Garande.

Cum gratia et pruilegio regali ad fin-
primendum solum.

C Faultes escaped in the Pryntinge.

Fol.	Pagina.	Linea.	Errata.	Reade.
ii.	i.	xxxij.	Marternus.	Paternus.
viij.	ii.	rrrbij.	facyon	facyon.
vij.	ij.	In the Margent,	dexteritee	agylytee.
lvij.	i.	rbi.	Unto Counsayll,	Counsell unto.
ixij.	i.	i.	dismay you not,	dysmay you.
ixrbij.	ij.	r.	repusyng,	repulsyng.
6.	i.	i.	syience,	dyd syience,
			attentisely,	attentysely.

